Listing Rules
# Listing Rules

**LR 1** Preliminary: All securities

1.1 Introduction  
1.2 Modifying rules and consulting the FCA  
1.3 Information gathering and publication  
1.4 Miscellaneous  
1.5 Standard and Premium Listing  
1.6 Listing Categories  
1 Annex 1 Market abuse safe harbours

**LR 2** Requirements for listing: All securities

2.1 Preliminary  
2.2 Requirements for all securities

**LR 3** Listing applications: All securities

3.1 Application  
3.2 Application for admission to listing  
3.3 Shares  
3.4 Debt and other securities  
3.5 Block listing

**LR 4** Listing particulars for professional securities market and certain other securities: All securities

4.1 Application and Purpose  
4.2 Contents and format of listing particulars  
4.3 Approval and publication of listing particulars  
4.4 Miscellaneous

**LR 5** Suspending, cancelling and restoring listing and reverse takeovers: All securities

5.1 Suspending listing  
5.2 Cancelling listing  
5.3 Requests to cancel or suspend  
5.4 Restoring listing  
5.4A Transfer between listing categories  
5.5 Miscellaneous  
5.6 Reverse takeovers
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LR 6</th>
<th>Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>Historical financial information requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>Revenue earning track record requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4</td>
<td>Independent business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.5</td>
<td>Controlling shareholders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.6</td>
<td>Control of the business</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.7</td>
<td>Working capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.8</td>
<td>Warrants or options to subscribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.9</td>
<td>Constitutional arrangements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.10</td>
<td>Specialist companies: mineral companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.11</td>
<td>Specialist companies: scientific research based companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.12</td>
<td>Specialist companies: property companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.13</td>
<td>Externally managed companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.14</td>
<td>Shares in public hands</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.15</td>
<td>Shares of a non-EEA company</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LR 7</th>
<th>Listing Principles and Premium Listing Principles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>Application and purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2</td>
<td>The Listing and Premium Listing Principles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LR 8</th>
<th>Sponsors: Premium listing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>When a sponsor must be appointed or its guidance obtained</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Role of a sponsor: general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Role of a sponsor: transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5</td>
<td>Responsibilities of listed companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>Criteria for approval as a sponsor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7</td>
<td>Supervision of sponsors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LR 9</th>
<th>Continuing obligations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Preliminary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>Requirements with continuing application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Continuing obligations: holders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>Documents requiring prior approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>Notifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.7A</td>
<td>Preliminary statement of annual results, and statement of dividends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>Annual financial report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 Ann</td>
<td>Annex 1 THE MODEL CODE (R)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LR 10</th>
<th>Significant transactions: Premium listing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>Preliminary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>Classifying transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>Class 2 requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>Class 1 requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>Transactions by specialist companies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>Miscellaneous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Annex 1</td>
<td>The Class Tests</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LR 11**
Related party transactions: Premium listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>Related party transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Annex 1</td>
<td>Transactions to which related party transaction rules do not apply</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LR 12**
Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2</td>
<td>Prohibition on purchase of own securities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3</td>
<td>Purchase from a related party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4</td>
<td>Purchase of own equity shares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
<td>Purchase of own securities other than equity shares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>Treasury shares</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LR 13**
Contents of circulars: Premium listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
<td>Preliminary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>Approval of circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
<td>Contents of all circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
<td>Class 1 circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
<td>Financial information in Class 1 Circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>Related party circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.7</td>
<td>Circulars about purchase of own equity shares</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>Other circulars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 Annex 1</td>
<td>Class 1 circulars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LR 14**
Standard listing (shares)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.2</td>
<td>Requirements for listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3</td>
<td>Continuing obligations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LR 15**
Closed-Ended Investment Funds: Premium listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sub-section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15.1</td>
<td>Application</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>Requirements for listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3</td>
<td>Listing applications and procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.4</td>
<td>Continuing obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.5</td>
<td>Transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>Notifications and periodic financial information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR</td>
<td>Topic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Open-ended investment companies: Premium listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Debt and debt-like securities: Standard listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Certificates representing certain securities: Standard listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Securitised derivatives: Standard listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Miscellaneous Securities: Standard listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Sovereign Controlled Commercial Companies: Premium listing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
21.8 Continuing obligations: Certificates representing shares
21.9 Transactions and circulars: certificates representing shares
21.10 Transactions with related parties: certificates representing shares

LR App 1 Relevant definitions
    App 1.1 Relevant definitions

LR App 2 Annual Financial Report for certain listed companies
    App 2.1

LR App 3 List of Regulatory Information Services [deleted]

Transitional provisions and Schedules

TR 1 Transitional Provisions: General and Venture Capital Trusts
TR 2 Transitional Provision for closed-ended investment funds listed before 28 September 2007
TR 3 Transitional Provisions for Investment Entities already listed under LR 14 Overseas Companies
TR 4 Transitional Provision for Issuers with a Premium Listing that are Overseas Companies
TR 5 Transitional Provision for companies incorporated in the United Kingdom
TR 6 Transitional Provision for overseas companies
TR 7 Transitional Provision for issuers with shares that do not confer full voting rights
TR 8 Transitional Provisions for the Combined Code
TR 9 Transitional Provision for a company that has a premium listing of equity shares but does not comply with LR 9.2.20R
TR 10 Transitional Provision in relation to new sponsor services
TR 12 Transitional Provisions in relation to continuing obligations regarding premium listing
TR 13 Transitional Provisions for the UK Corporate Governance Code
TR 14 Transitional Provisions in relation to DTR 7.3 (Related party transactions)
Sch 1 [to follow]
Sch 2 [to follow]
Sch 3 [to follow]
Sch 4 Powers exercised
Sch 5 [to follow]
Sch 6 Rules that can be waived
Chapter 1

Preliminary: All securities
1.1 Introduction


Application

LR applies as follows:

1. all of LR (other than LR 8.3, LR 8.4, LR 8.6 and LR 8.7) applies to an issuer; and

2. LR 1, LR 8.1, LR 8.3, LR 8.4, LR 8.6 and LR 8.7 apply to a sponsor and a person applying for approval as a sponsor.

Note: when exercising its functions under Part VI of the Act, the FCA may use the name: the UK Listing Authority.

Other relevant parts of Handbook

Note: Other parts of the Handbook that may also be relevant to issuers or sponsors include DTR (the Disclosure Guidance and Transparency Rules sourcebook), PRR (the Prospectus Regulation Rules sourcebook), COBS (the Conduct of Business sourcebook), DEPP (Decision Procedure and Penalties Manual), Chapter 9 of SUP (the Supervision manual) and GEN (General Provisions).

The following Regulatory Guides may also be relevant to issuers or sponsors:

1. The Enforcement Guide (EG)
2. [intentionally blank]
1.2 Modifying rules and consulting the FCA

Modifying or dispensing with rules

1.2.1 (1) The FCA may dispense with or modify the listing rules in such cases and by reference to such circumstances as it considers appropriate (subject to the terms of EU directives and the Act).

(2) A dispensation or modification may be either unconditional or subject to specified conditions.

(3) If an issuer or sponsor has applied for, or been granted, a dispensation or modification, it must notify the FCA immediately it becomes aware of any matter which is material to the relevance or appropriateness of the dispensation or modification.

(4) The FCA may revoke or modify a dispensation or modification.

1.2.2 (1) An application to the FCA to dispense with or modify a listing rule must be in writing.

(2) The application must:

(a) contain a clear explanation of why the dispensation or modification is requested;
(b) include details of any special requirements, for example, the date by which the dispensation or modification is required;
(c) contain all relevant information that should reasonably be brought to the FCA’s attention;
(d) contain any statement or information that is required by the listing rules to be included for a specific type of dispensation or modification; and
(e) include copies of all documents relevant to the application.

1.2.3 An application to dispense with or modify a listing rule should ordinarily be made:

(1) for a listing rule that is a continuing obligation, at least five business days before the proposed dispensation or modification is to take effect; and

(2) for any other listing rule, at least ten business days before the proposed dispensation or modification is to take effect.
Companies in severe financial difficulty

If an issuer applies to the FCA to dispense with or modify a listing rule on the basis that it is in severe financial difficulty, the FCA would ordinarily expect the issuer to comply with the conditions in LR 10.8 (to the extent relevant to the particular rule for which the dispensation or modification is sought). In particular, the FCA would expect the issuer to comply with those conditions that are directed at demonstrating that it is in severe financial difficulty.

Early consultation with FCA

An issuer or sponsor should consult with the FCA at the earliest possible stage if it:

1. is in doubt about how the listing rules apply in a particular situation; or
2. considers that it may be necessary for the FCA to dispense with or modify a listing rule.

Where a listing rule refers to consultation with the FCA, submissions should be made in writing other than in circumstances of exceptional urgency or in the case of a submission from a sponsor in relation to the provision of a sponsor service.

Address for correspondence

Note: The FCA’s address for correspondence is:

The Financial Conduct Authority
12 Endeavour Square
London, E20 1JN
Tel: 020 7066 8333
www.fca.org.uk/markets/ukla
1.3 Information gathering and publication

Information gathering

1.3.1 An issuer must provide to the FCA as soon as possible:

(1) any information and explanations that the FCA may reasonably require to decide whether to grant an application for admission;

(2) any information that the FCA considers appropriate to protect investors or ensure the smooth operation of the market; and [Note: Article 16.1 CARD]

(3) any other information or explanation that the FCA may reasonably require to verify whether listing rules are being and have been complied with.

FCA may require issuer to publish information

1.3.2 (1) The FCA may, at any time, require an issuer to publish such information in such form and within such time limits as it considers appropriate to protect investors or to ensure the smooth operation of the market. [Note: Article 16.2 CARD]

(2) If an issuer fails to comply with a requirement under paragraph (1) the FCA may itself publish the information (after giving the issuer an opportunity to make representations as to why it should not be published). [Note: Article 16.2 CARD]

Misleading information not to be published

1.3.3 An issuer must take reasonable care to ensure that any information it notifies to a RIS or makes available through the FCA is not misleading, false or deceptive and does not omit anything likely to affect the import of the information.

Notification when a RIS is not open for business

1.3.4 If an issuer is required to notify information to a RIS at a time when a RIS is not open for business it must distribute the information as soon as possible to:

(1) not less than two national newspapers in the United Kingdom;

(2) two newswire services operating in the United Kingdom; and
(3) a RIS for release as soon as it opens.
1.4 Miscellaneous

Appointment of sponsor

1.4.1 (1) If it appears to the FCA that there is, or there may be, a breach of the listing rules or the disclosure requirements and transparency rules by an issuer with a premium listing, the FCA may in writing require the issuer to appoint a sponsor to advise the issuer on the application of the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.

(2) If required to do so under (1), an issuer must, as soon as practicable, appoint a sponsor to advise it on the application of the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.

[Note: LR 8.2 sets out the various circumstances in which an issuer must appoint, or obtain guidance from, a sponsor.]

Overseas companies

1.4.2 If a listing rule refers to a requirement in legislation applicable to a listed company incorporated in the United Kingdom, a listed overseas company must comply with the requirement so far as:

(1) information available to it enables it to do so; and

(2) compliance is not contrary to the law in its country of incorporation.

1.4.3 A listed overseas company must, if required to do so by the FCA, provide the FCA with a letter from an independent legal adviser explaining why compliance with a requirement referred to in LR 1.4.2 is contrary to the law in its country of incorporation.

1.4.4 [deleted]

1.4.5 [deleted]

English language

1.4.6 A document that is required under a listing rule to be filed, notified to a RIS, provided to the FCA or sent to security holders must be in English.
Market abuse safe havens

1.4.7 [deleted]

Fees

1.4.8 The provisions relating to periodic fees for issuers and sponsors are set out in ■ FEE 1, ■ 2 and ■ 4.

1.4.9 (1) If the listing rules require an issuer to send documents to its security holders, the issuer may, in accordance with ■ DTR 6.1.8 R, use electronic means to send those documents.

1.4.10 [deleted]

Use of an RIS

1.4.11 Where a listing rule requires an issuer subject to ■ DTR 6.3.1 R to use the services of an RIS, the issuer must comply with the provisions of ■ DTR 6.3.

1.4.12 Where a listing rule requires an issuer who is not subject to ■ DTR 6.3.1 R to use the services of an RIS, the issuer must comply with the provisions of ■ DTR 6.3, except in relation to information which is required to be disclosed under the Transparency Directive, articles 17 and 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation or the DTR.
1.5 Standard and Premium Listing

Standard and premium listing explained

1.5.1 Under the listing rules each issuer must satisfy the requirements in the rules that are specified to apply to it and its relevant securities. In some cases a listing is described as being either a standard listing or a premium listing.

(2) A listing that is described as a standard listing sets requirements that are based on the minimum EU directive standards. A listing that is described as a premium listing will include requirements that exceed those required under relevant EU directives.

(3) Premium listing exists for:

(a) equity shares of:

- commercial companies,
- closed-ended investment funds,
- open-ended investment companies, and
- sovereign controlled commercial companies; and

(b) certificates representing shares of sovereign controlled commercial companies.

Any other listing will be a standard listing.

(4) In the case of equity shares of a commercial company or equity shares or certificates representing shares of a sovereign controlled commercial company, an issuer will have a choice under the listing rules as to whether it has a standard listing or a premium listing. The type of listing it applies for will therefore determine the requirements it must comply with.

(5) LR 5.4A provides a process for the transfer of the category of listing of equity shares and for the transfer of the category of listing of certificates representing shares.

(6) In one case, for further classes of equity shares of an investment entity, the equity shares may be admitted to a standard listing provided that, and only for so long as, the issuer has a premium listing of equity shares.
Misleading statements about status

An issuer that is not an issuer with a premium listing must not describe itself or hold itself out (in whatever terms) as having a premium listing or make any representation which suggests, or which is reasonably likely to be understood as suggesting, that it has a premium listing or complies or is required to comply with the requirements that apply to a premium listing.
An issuer must comply with the rules that are applicable to every security in the category of listing which applies to each security the issuer has listed. The categories of listing are:

(1) premium listing (commercial company);
(2) premium listing (closed-ended investment fund);
(3) premium listing (open-ended investment companies);
(3A) premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company);
(4) standard listing (shares);
(5) standard listing (debt and debt-like securities);
(6) standard listing (certificates representing certain securities);
(7) standard listing (securitised derivatives);
(8) standard listing (miscellaneous securities).

An issuer must inform the FCA if the characteristics of a security change so that the security no longer meets the definition of a security in the category in which it has been placed.
Market abuse safe harbours

[deleted]
Chapter 2

Requirements for listing: All securities
2.1 Preliminary

Application

2.1.1
This chapter applies to all applicants for admission to listing (unless a rule is specified only to apply to a particular type of applicant or security).

Refusal of applications

2.1.2
Under the Act, the FCA may not grant an application for admission unless it is satisfied that:

(1) the requirements of the listing rules are complied with; and

(2) any special requirement (see LR 2.1.4 R) is complied with.

2.1.3
Under the Act, the FCA may also refuse an application for admission if it considers that:

(1) admission of the securities would be detrimental to investors' interests; or

(2) for securities already listed in another EEA State, the issuer has failed to comply with any obligations under that listing.

Special requirements

2.1.4
(1) The FCA may make the admission of securities subject to any special requirement that it considers appropriate to protect investors. [Note: article 12 CARD]

(2) The FCA must explicitly inform the issuer of any special requirement that it imposes. [Note: article 12 CARD]

No conditional admission

2.1.5
The FCA is not able to make the admission of securities conditional on any event. The FCA may, in particular cases, seek confirmation from an issuer before the admission of securities that the admission does not purport to be conditional on any matter.
2.2 Requirements for all securities

Incorporation

2.2.1 An applicant (other than a public sector issuer) must be:

(1) duly incorporated or otherwise validly established according to the relevant laws of its place of incorporation or establishment; and

(2) operating in conformity with its constitution. [Note: articles 42 and 52 CARD]

Validity

2.2.2 To be listed, securities must:

(1) conform with the law of the applicant’s place of incorporation;

(2) be duly authorised according to the requirements of the applicant's constitution; and

(3) have any necessary statutory or other consents. [Note: articles 45 and 53 CARD]

Admission to trading

2.2.3 Other than in regard to securities to which ▪ LR 4 applies, to be listed, equity shares must be admitted to trading on a regulated market for listed securities operated by a RIE. All other securities must be admitted to trading on a RIE’s market for listed securities.

Transferability

2.2.4 (1) To be listed, securities must be freely transferable. [Note: articles 46, 54 and 60 CARD]

(2) To be listed, shares must be fully paid and free from all liens and from any restriction on the right of transfer (except any restriction imposed for failure to comply with a notice under section 793 of the Companies Act 2006) (Notice by company requiring information about interests in its shares).

2.2.5 The FCA may modify ▪ LR 2.2.4 R to allow partly paid securities to be listed if it is satisfied that their transferability is not restricted and investors have been provided with appropriate information to enable dealings in the
2.2.6 The FCA may in exceptional circumstances modify or dispense with § 2.2.4 R where the applicant has the power to disapprove the transfer of shares if the FCA is satisfied that this power would not disturb the market in those shares. [Note: article 46 CARD]

2.2.7 (1) The expected aggregate market value of all securities (excluding treasury shares) to be listed must be at least:

(a) £700,000 for shares; and
(b) £200,000 for debt securities.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to tap issues where the amount of the debt securities is not fixed.

(3) Paragraph (1) does not apply if securities of the same class are already listed. [Note: articles 43 and 48 CARD]

2.2.8 The FCA may modify § 2.2.7 R to admit securities of a lower value if it is satisfied that there will be an adequate market for the securities concerned. [Note: articles 43 and 58 CARD]

2.2.9 An application for listing of securities of any class must:

(1) if no securities of that class are already listed, relate to all securities of that class, issued or proposed to be issued; or

(2) if securities of that class are already listed, relate to all further securities of that class, issued or proposed to be issued. [Note: articles 49, 56 and 62 CARD]

2.2.10 (1) This rule applies if under the Act, the Prospectus Regulation or under the law of another EEA State:

(a) a prospectus must be approved and published for the securities; or

(b) the applicant is permitted and elects to draw up a prospectus for the securities.

(2) To be listed:

(a) a prospectus must have been approved by the FCA and published in relation to the securities; or

(b) if another EEA State is the Home Member State for the securities, the relevant competent authority must have supplied the FCA with:
(i) a certificate of approval;
(ii) a copy of the *prospectus* as approved; and
(iii) (if applicable) a translation of the *summary* of the *prospectus*.

### Listing particulars

2.2.11 **R**

(1) This rule applies if, under **LR 4**, listing particulars must be approved and published for securities.

(2) To be listed, listing particulars for the securities must have been approved by the FCA and published in accordance with **LR 4**.

### Convertible securities and miscellaneous securities carrying the right to buy or subscribe for other securities

2.2.12 **R**

*Convertible securities and miscellaneous securities* giving the holder the right to buy or subscribe for other securities may be admitted to listing only if the securities into which they are convertible or over which they give a right to buy or subscribe are already, or will become at the same time:

(1) *listed securities*; or

(2) *securities* listed on a regulated, regularly operating, recognised open market. *[Note: article 59 CARD]*

2.2.13 **G**

The FCA may dispense with **LR 2.2.12 R** if it is satisfied that holders of the *convertible securities* have at their disposal all the information necessary to form an opinion about the value of the underlying *securities*. *[Note: article 59 CARD]*

2.2.14 **R**

[deleted]

2.2.15 **R**

[deleted]
Chapter 3

Listing applications: All securities
3.1 Application

(2) This chapter applies to an applicant for the admission of securities.
3.2 Application for admission to listing

Location of official list

3.2.1 The FCA will maintain the official list on its website.

Method of application

3.2.2 An applicant for admission must apply to the FCA by:

(1) submitting, in final form:
   (a) the documents described in ■ LR 3.3 in the case of an application in respect of equity shares;
   (b) the documents described in ■ LR 3.4 in the case of an application in respect of debt securities or other securities;
   (c) the documents described in ■ LR 3.5 in the case of a block listing;

(2) submitting all additional documents, explanations and information as required by the FCA;

(3) submitting verification of any information in such manner as the FCA may specify; and

(4) paying the fee set out in ■ FEES 3 by the required date.

3.2.3 Before submitting the documents referred to in ■ LR 3.2.2 R (1), an applicant should contact the FCA to agree the date on which the FCA will consider the application.

3.2.4 All documents must be submitted to the Issuer Management at the FCA’s address.

Grant of an application for admission to listing

3.2.5 The FCA will admit securities to listing if all relevant documents required by ■ LR 3.2.2 R have been submitted to the FCA.

3.2.6 When considering an application for admission to listing, the FCA may:

(1) carry out any enquiries and request any further information which it considers appropriate, including consulting with other regulators or exchanges;
(2) request that an applicant, or its specified representative answer questions and explain any matter the FCA considers relevant to the application for listing;

(3) take into account any information which it considers appropriate in relation to the application for listing;

(4) request that any information provided by the applicant be verified in such manner as the FCA may specify; and

(5) impose any additional conditions on the applicant as the FCA considers appropriate.

3.2.7 The admission becomes effective only when the FCA’s decision to admit the securities to listing has been announced by being either:

(1) disseminated by a RIS; or

(2) posted on a notice board designated by the FCA should the electronic systems be unavailable.
3.3 Shares

Application

3.3.1 R LR 3.3.2 R to LR 3.3.7 R apply to an applicant which is applying for a listing of its shares except for preference shares that are specialist securities.

Documents to be provided 48 hours in advance

3.3.2 R The following documents must be submitted, in final form, to the FCA by midday two business days before the FCA is to consider the application:

(1) a completed Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List;

(2) one of:
   (a) the prospectus, or listing particulars, that has been approved by the FCA; or
   (b) a copy of the prospectus, a certificate of approval and (if applicable) a translation of the summary of the prospectus, if another EEA State is the home Member State for the shares; or
   (c) [deleted]

(3) any circular that has been published in connection with the application, if applicable;

(4) any approved supplementary prospectus or approved supplementary listing particulars, if applicable;

(5) written confirmation of the number of shares to be allotted (pursuant to a board resolution allotting the shares); and [Note: If this is not possible, see LR 3.3.4 R]

(6) if a prospectus or listing particulars have not been produced, a copy of the RIS announcement detailing the number and type of shares that are the subject of the application and the circumstances of their issue.

Note: The Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.

3.3.2A R If a prospectus or listing particulars have not been produced then the Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List must contain
confirmation that a prospectus or listing particulars are not required and details of the reasons why they are not required.

Documents to be provided on the day

The following documents signed by a sponsor (if a sponsor is required under LR 8) or by a duly authorised officer of the applicant (if a sponsor is not required under LR 8) must be submitted, in final form, to the FCA before 9 a.m. on the day the FCA is to consider the application:

1. a completed Shareholder Statement, in the case of an applicant that is applying for a listing of a class of shares for the first time; or [Note: see LR 8.4.3 R and LR 8.4.9 R];

2. a completed Pricing Statement, in the case of a placing, open offer, vendor consideration placing, offer for subscription of equity shares or an issue out of treasury of equity shares of a class already listed. [Note: see LR 8.4.3 R and LR 8.4.9 R].

Note: The Shareholder Statement and the Pricing Statement forms can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.

If written confirmation of the number of shares to be allotted pursuant to a board resolution cannot be submitted to the FCA by the deadline set out in LR 3.3.2 R or the number of shares to be admitted is lower than the number notified under LR 3.3.2 R, written confirmation of the number of shares to be allotted or admitted must be provided to the FCA by the applicant or its sponsor at least one hour before the admission to listing is to become effective.

If the FCA has considered an application for listing and the shares the subject of the application are not all allotted and admitted following the initial allotment of the shares (for example, under an offer for subscription), further allotments of shares may be admitted if before 4pm on the day before admission is sought the FCA has been provided with:

1. written confirmation of the number of shares allotted pursuant to a board resolution; and

2. a copy of the RIS announcement detailing the number and type of shares and the circumstances of their issue.

Other documents to be submitted

Written confirmation of the number of shares that were allotted (pursuant to a board resolution allotting the shares) must be submitted to the FCA as soon as practicable after admission if the number is lower than the number that was announced under LR 3.2.7 G as being admitted to listing.

Documents to be kept

An applicant must keep copies of the following for six years after the admission to listing:
(1) any agreement to acquire any assets, business or shares in consideration for or in relation to which the company's shares are being issued;

(2) any letter, report, valuation, contract or other documents referred to in the prospectus, listing particulars, circular or other document issued in connection with those shares;

(3) the applicant's constitution as at the date of admission;

(4) the annual report and accounts of the applicant and of any guarantor, for each of the periods which form part of the applicant's financial record contained in the prospectus or listing particulars;

(5) any interim accounts made up since the date to which the last annual report and accounts were made up and prior to the date of admission;

(6) any temporary and definitive documents of title;

(7) in the case of an application in respect of shares issued pursuant to an employees' share scheme, the scheme document;

(8) where listing particulars or another document are published in connection with any scheme requiring court approval, any court order and the certificate of registration issued by the Registrar of Companies; and

(9) copies of board resolutions of the applicant allotting or issuing the shares.

An applicant must provide to the FCA the documents set out in LR 3.3.6 R, if requested to do so.
3.4 Debt and other securities

Application - debt securities etc

3.4.1 R LR 3.4.4 R to LR 3.4.6 R apply to an applicant that is seeking admission of any of the following types of securities:

(1) debt securities;
(2) asset-backed securities;
(3) certificates representing certain securities;
(4) [deleted]
(5) convertible securities;
(6) miscellaneous securities; and
(7) preference shares that are specialist securities.

Application - issuance programmes

3.4.2 R LR 3.4.7 R to LR 3.4.8 R apply to an applicant for the admission of a debt securities or asset-backed securities issuance programme.

Application - public sector issuers

3.4.3 R LR 3.4.9 R to LR 3.4.13 R apply to an applicant that is a public sector issuer.

Documents to be provided 48 hours in advance

3.4.4 R An applicant must submit, in final form, to the FCA by midday two business days before the FCA is to consider the application:

(1) a completed Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List;
(2) either:
   (a) the prospectus, or listing particulars that has been approved by the FCA; or
   (b) a copy of the prospectus, a certificate of approval and (if applicable) a translation of the summary of the prospectus, if another EEA State is the home Member State for the securities;
(3) any approved supplementary prospectus or approved supplementary listing particulars, if applicable; and

(4) written confirmation of the number of securities to be issued (pursuant to a board resolution). [Note: if this is not possible, see LR 3.4.5 R]; and

(5) any working capital statement required to be published under LR 21.6.14R or LR 21.8.27R(2).

Note: The Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA’s website.

Documents to be provided on the day of admission

3.4.5 R If confirmation of the number of securities to be issued pursuant to a board resolution cannot be submitted to the FCA by the deadline set out in LR 3.4.4 R or, the number of securities to be admitted is lower than the number notified under LR 3.4.4 R, written confirmation of the number of securities to be issued or admitted must be provided to the FCA by the applicant at least one hour before the admission to listing is to become effective.

Documents to be kept

3.4.6 R An applicant must keep, for six years after the admission to listing, a copy of the items set out in LR 3.3.6 R (1) to (6) and LR 3.3.6 R (9) and must provide any of those documents to the FCA if requested to do so.

Procedure for issuance programmes: initial offering and increase to programme size

3.4.7 R An applicant must comply with LR 3.4.4 R to LR 3.4.6 R with the following modifications:

(1) [deleted]

(2) if the FCA approves the application it will admit to listing all debt securities which may be issued under the programme within 12 months after the publication of the base prospectus or listing particulars subject to the FCA:

(a) being advised of the final terms of each issue for which a listing is sought; and

(b) receiving and approving for publication any supplementary documents that may be appropriate.

(c) [deleted]

(3) an applicant must submit a supplementary prospectus or supplementary listing particulars instead of the document required by LR 3.4.4 R (2) in the case of an increase in the maximum amount of debt securities which may be in issue and listed at any one time under an issuance programme.
An applicant for the admission of securities under an issuance programme must confirm in its Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List that at admission all of the securities the subject of the application will be in issue pursuant to board resolutions authorising the issue.

**Issuance programmes: final terms**

1. The final terms must be submitted in writing to the FCA as soon as possible after they have been agreed and no later than 2 p.m. on the day before listing is to become effective.

2. The final terms may be submitted by:
   - the applicant; or
   - a duly authorised officer of the applicant.

3. [deleted]

Note: For further details on final terms, see article 8(5) of the Prospectus Regulation.

**Exempt public sector issuers**

A public sector issuer that seeks admission of debt securities referred to in article 1(2)(b) and (d) of the Prospectus Regulation must submit to the FCA in final form a completed Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List.

Note: The Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA's website.

An application referred to in §LR 3.4.9 R should be made in accordance with the timetable referred to in §LR 3.4.8 R.

A public sector issuer that is not required to produce a prospectus or listing particulars must confirm on its application form that no prospectus or listing particulars are required.

Apart from §LR 3.4.9 R, §LR 3.4.9A G and §LR 3.4.9B G no other provisions in §LR 3.4 apply to the admission of debt securities referred to in article 1(2)(b) and (d) of the Prospectus Regulation.

**Other public sector issuers**

§LR 3.4.10 R, §LR 3.4.8 R and §LR 3.4.11 R to §LR 3.4.13 R apply to applications for admission to listing of debt securities by a public sector issuer other than one referred to in §LR 3.4.9 R.

An applicant referred to in §LR 3.4.10 R must submit the items set out in §LR 3.4.4 R to the FCA in final form by midday two business days before the FCA is to consider the application.
3.4.12 [deleted]

3.4.13 An applicant referred to in LR 3.4.10 R must keep, for six years after the admission to listing, a copy of the items set out in LR 3.3.6 R (1) to LR 3.3.6 R (6) and in LR 3.3.6 R (9).
3.5 Block listing

Application

3.5.1 R This section applies to an applicant that wishes to apply for admission of securities using a block listing.

When a block listing can be used

3.5.2 G If the process of applying for admission of securities is likely to be very onerous due to the frequent or irregular nature of allotments and if no prospectus or listing particulars are required for the securities, an applicant may apply for a block listing of a specified number of the securities.

3.5.3 G The grant of a block listing constitutes admission to listing for the securities that are the subject of the block. Separately, the provisions of article 1(4) of the Prospectus Regulation will need to be considered by the applicant when the securities that are the subject of the block listing are being issued.

An applicant applying for admission to listing by way of a block listing must submit in final form, at least two business days before the FCA is to consider the application, a completed Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List. An application in respect of multiple schemes must identify the schemes but need not set out separate block listing amounts for each scheme.

Note: The Application for Admission of Securities to the Official List form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.

3.5.5 R (1) An applicant applying for admission to listing by way of a block listing must notify an RIS of the number and type of securities that are the subject of the block listing application and the circumstances of their issue.

(2) The notification in paragraph (1) must be made by 9 a.m. on the day the FCA is to consider the application.

3.5.6 R Every six months the applicant must notify a RIS of the details of the number of securities covered by the block listing which have been allotted in the previous six months, using the Block Listing Six Monthly Return.

Note: A copy of the Block Listing Six Monthly Return can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.
3.5.7 An issuer that wishes to synchronise block listing six monthly returns for a number of block listing facilities may do so by providing the return required by LR 3.5.6 R earlier than required to move the timing of returns onto a different six monthly cycle. An issuer with multiple block listing facilities should ensure that allotments under each facility are separately stated.
Chapter 4

Listing particulars for professional securities market and certain other securities: All securities
4.1 Application and Purpose

**Application**

4.1.1 This chapter applies to an issuer that has applied for the admission of:

(1) securities specified in article 1(2) of the Prospectus Regulation (other than securities specified in article 1(2)(b) or (d) of that regulation); or

(2) any other specialist securities for which a prospectus is not required under the Prospectus Regulation.

**Purpose**

4.1.2 (1) The purpose of this chapter is to require listing particulars to be prepared and published for securities that are the subject of an application for listing in the circumstances set out in LR 4.1.1 R where a prospectus is not required under the Prospectus Regulation.

**Listing particulars to be approved and published**

4.1.3 An issuer must ensure that listing particulars for securities referred to in LR 4.1.1 R are approved by the FCA and published in accordance with LR 4.3.5 R.

**Note:** Under LR 2.2.11 R, the securities will only be listed if listing particulars for the securities have been approved by the FCA and published.
4.2 Contents and format of listing particulars

General contents of listing particulars

4.2.1 Section 80 (1) of the Act (general duty of disclosure in listing particulars) requires listing particulars submitted to the FCA to contain all such information as investors and their professional advisers would reasonably require, and reasonably expect to find there, for the purpose of making an informed assessment of:

(1) the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses, and prospects of the issuer of the securities; and

(2) the rights attaching to the securities.

Summary

4.2.2 (1) The listing particulars must contain a summary that complies with the requirements in articles 7 and 27(4) of the Prospectus Regulation and Chapter I of the Prospectus RTS Regulation (as if those requirements applied to the listing particulars).

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply:

(a) in relation to specialist securities referred to in LR 4.1.1R (2); or

(b) if, in accordance with article 7(1) of the Prospectus Regulation, no summary would be required in relation to the securities.

Format of listing particulars

4.2.3 (1) The listing particulars must be in a format that complies with the relevant requirements in the Prospectus Regulation and the PR Regulation (as if those requirements applied to the listing particulars).

Minimum information to be included

4.2.4 The following minimum information from the PR Regulation must be included in listing particulars:

(1) for an issue of bonds including bonds convertible into the issuer’s shares or exchangeable into a third party issuer’s shares or derivative securities, irrespective of the denomination of the issue, the minimum information required by Annexes 7 and 15 of the PR Regulation;
(2) the additional information required by Annexes 17 and 18 of the PR Regulation where relevant;

(3) for an issue of asset-backed securities, irrespective of the denomination per unit of the issue, the minimum information required by Annexes 9, 15 and 19 of the PR Regulation;

(4) for an issue of certificates representing shares, irrespective of the denomination per unit of the issue, the minimum information required by Annexes 5 and 13 (for a primary issuance) of the PR Regulation;

(5) for an issue of securities by the government of a non-EEA State or a local or regional authority of a non-EEA State, the minimum information required by Annexes 10 and 15 of the PR Regulation; and

(6) for all issues that are guaranteed, the minimum information required by Annex 21 of the PR Regulation.

For all other issues, the FCA would expect issuers to follow the most appropriate Annexes in the PR Regulation to determine the minimum information to be included in listing particulars.

Incorporation by reference

An issuer may incorporate information by reference in the listing particulars as if article 19 of the Prospectus Regulation and the PR Regulation applied to the listing particulars.

Equivalent information

An issuer may include equivalent information in listing particulars as if article 18(2) of the Prospectus Regulation applied to the listing particulars.

English language

Listing particulars must be in English.

Omission of information

Under section 82 of the Act (exemptions from disclosure) the FCA may authorise the omission from listing particulars of information on specified grounds.

A request to the FCA to authorise the omission of specific information in a particular case must:

(1) be in writing from the issuer;

(2) identify the specific information concerned and the specific reasons for the omission; and
(3) state why in the issuer’s opinion one or more of the grounds in section 82 of the Act applies.

4.2.11 For the purposes of section 82(1)(c) of the Act, specialist securities are specified.

Responsibility for listing particulars

4.2.12 Part 3 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Official Listing of Securities) Regulations 2001 (SI 2001/2956) sets out the persons responsible for listing particulars. In particular, in those regulations:

(1) regulation 6 specifies who is generally responsible for listing particulars; and

(2) regulation 9 modifies the operation of regulation 6 in relation to specialist securities.

4.2.13 (1) In the case of listing particulars for specialist securities:

(a) the issuer must state in the listing particulars that it accepts responsibility for the listing particulars;

(b) the directors may state in the listing particulars that they accept responsibility for the listing particulars; and

(c) other persons may state in the listing particulars that they accept responsibility for all or part of the listing particulars and in that case the statement by the issuer or directors may be appropriately modified.

(2) An issuer that is the government of a non-EEA State or a local or regional authority of a non-EEA State is not required under paragraph (1)(a) to state that it accepts responsibility for the listing particulars.
4.3 Approval and publication of listing particulars

Approval of listing particulars

4.3.1 R An application for approval of listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars must comply with the procedures in PRR 3.1 (as if those procedures applied to the application), except that the applicant does not need to submit a completed form A.

4.3.2 R The FCA will approve listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars if it is satisfied that the requirements of the Act and this chapter have been complied with.

4.3.3 G The FCA will try to notify the applicant of its decision on an application for approval of listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars within the same time limits as are specified in article 20 of the Prospectus Regulation for an application for approval of a prospectus or supplementary prospectus.

4.3.4 R An issuer must ensure that listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars are not published until they have been approved by the FCA.

Filing and publication of listing particulars etc

4.3.5 R An issuer must ensure that after listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars are approved by the FCA, the listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars are filed and published as if the relevant requirements in PRR 3.2, article 21 of the Prospectus Regulation, the PR Regulation and the Prospectus RTS Regulation applied to them.
4.4 Miscellaneous

Supplementary listing particulars

4.4.1 [Section 81] of the Act (supplementary listing particulars) requires an issuer to submit supplementary listing particulars to the FCA for approval if at any time after listing particulars have been submitted to the FCA and before the commencement of dealings in the securities following their admission to the official list:

1. there is a significant change affecting any matter contained in those particulars the inclusion of which was required by:
   (a) [section 80] of the Act (general duty of disclosure in listing particulars); or
   (b) listing rules; or
   (c) the FCA; or

2. a significant new matter arises, the inclusion of information in respect of which would have been so required if it had arisen when the particulars were prepared.

4.4.2 An issuer must ensure that after supplementary listing particulars are approved by the FCA, the supplementary listing particulars are filed and published as if the requirements in [PRR 3.2, article 21 of the Prospectus Regulation, the PR Regulation and the Prospectus RTS Regulation] applied to them.

Final terms

4.4.3 If final terms of the offer are not included in the listing particulars:

1. the final terms must be provided to investors and filed with the FCA, and made available to the public, as if the relevant requirements in [PRR 3.2, article 21 of the Prospectus Regulation, the PR Regulation and the Prospectus RTS Regulation] applied to them; and

2. the listing particulars must disclose the criteria and/or the conditions in accordance with which the above elements will be determined or, in the case of price, the maximum price.
LR 4: Listing particulars for professional securities market and certain other securities:...
Chapter 5

Suspending, cancelling and restoring listing and reverse takeovers: All securities
5.1 Suspending listing

FCA may suspend listing

5.1.1 The FCA may suspend, with effect from such time as it may determine, the listing of any securities if the smooth operation of the market is, or may be, temporarily jeopardised or it is necessary to protect investors. [Note: article 18(1) CARD]

(2) An issuer that has the listing of any of its securities suspended must continue to comply with all listing rules applicable to it.

(3) If the FCA suspends the listing of any securities, it may impose such conditions on the procedure for lifting the suspension as it considers appropriate.

Examples of when FCA may suspend

5.1.2 Examples of when the FCA may suspend the listing of securities include (but are not limited to) situations where it appears to the FCA that:

(1) the issuer has failed to meet its continuing obligations for listing; or

(2) the issuer has failed to publish financial information in accordance with the listing rules; or

(3) the issuer is unable to assess accurately its financial position and inform the market accordingly; or

(4) there is insufficient information in the market about a proposed transaction; or

(5) the issuer's securities have been suspended elsewhere; or

(6) the issuer has appointed administrators or receivers, or is an investment trust and is winding up; or

(7) for a securitised derivative that relates to a single underlying instrument, the underlying instrument is suspended; or

(8) for a securitised derivative that relates to a basket of underlying instruments, one or more underlying instruments of the basket are suspended; or

(9) for a miscellaneous security that carries a right to buy or subscribe for another security, the security over which the listed miscellaneous security carries a right to buy or subscribe has been suspended.
5.1.3 The FCA will not suspend the listing of a security to fix its price at a particular level.

**Suspension at issuer's request**

5.1.4 An issuer that intends to request the FCA to suspend the listing of its securities will need to comply with LR 5.3. The FCA will not suspend the listing if it is not satisfied that the circumstances justify the suspension.
5.2 Cancelling listing

FCA may cancel listing

5.2.1 The FCA may cancel the listing of securities if it is satisfied that there are special circumstances that preclude normal regular dealings in them. [Note: article 18(2) CARD]

Examples of when FCA may cancel

5.2.2 Examples of when the FCA may cancel the listing of securities include (but are not limited to) situations where it appears to the FCA that:

1. The securities are no longer admitted to trading as required by these rules; or

2. The issuer no longer satisfies its continuing obligations for listing, for example if the percentage of shares in public hands falls below 25% or such lower percentage as the FCA may permit (the FCA may however allow a reasonable time to restore the percentage, unless this is precluded by the need to maintain the smooth operation of the market or to protect investors); or

3. The securities’ listing has been suspended for more than six months;

4. The securities are equity shares with a standard listing issued by an investment entity where the investment entity no longer has a premium listing of equity shares.

5.2.3 The FCA will generally seek to cancel the listing of an issuer’s equity shares or certificates representing equity securities when the issuer completes a reverse takeover. [Note: LR 5.6 contains further detail relating to reverse takeovers.]

Cancellation at issuer’s request

5.2.4 An issuer must satisfy the requirements applicable to it in LR 5.2.5 R to LR 5.2.11 CR and LR 5.3 before the FCA will cancel the listing of its securities at its request.

5.2.4A LR 5.2.4 R applies even if the listing of the securities is suspended.
Cancellation of listing of securities with a premium listing

Subject to LR 5.2.7 R, LR 5.2.10 R, LR 5.2.11A R and LR 5.2.12 R, an issuer with a premium listing that wishes the FCA to cancel the listing of any of its securities with a premium listing must:

(1) send a circular to the holders of the relevant securities. The circular must:
   (a) comply with the requirements of LR 13.3.1 R and LR 13.3.2 R (contents of all circulars);
   (b) be submitted to the FCA for approval prior to publication; and
   (c) include the anticipated date of cancellation (which must be not less than 20 business days following the passing of the resolution referred to in paragraph (2));

(2) in the case of a cancellation of listing of equity shares, obtain, at a general meeting, the prior approval of a resolution for the cancellation from:
   (a) a majority of not less than 75% of the votes attaching to the shares voted on the resolution; and
   (b) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority of the votes attaching to the shares of independent shareholders voted on the resolution;

(2A) in the case of a cancellation of listing of certificates representing shares, obtain, at a meeting of the holders of the certificates, the prior approval of a resolution for the cancellation from:
   (a) a majority of not less than 75% in value of the certificates representing shares in issue at the time of the meeting that are voted on the resolution; and
   (b) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority in value of the certificates representing shares in issue at the time of the meeting that are:
      (i) held by holders of certificates other than the controlling shareholder; and
      (ii) that are voted on the resolution;

(3) notify a RIS, at the same time as the circular is despatched to the relevant holders of the securities, of the intended cancellation and of the notice period and meeting; and

(4) notify a RIS of the passing of the resolution in accordance with LR 9.6.18 R or (as applicable) LR 21.8.11R

[deleted]

[deleted]

[deleted]
5.2.7  R  

LR 5.2.5 R (2) and (2A) will not apply where an issuer of securities notifies a RIS:

1. that the financial position of the issuer or its group is so precarious that, but for the proposal referred to in LR 5.2.7 R (2), there is no reasonable prospect that the issuer will avoid going into formal insolvency proceedings;

2. that there is a proposal for a transaction, arrangement or other form of reconstruction of the issuer or its group which is necessary to ensure the survival of the issuer or its group and the continued listing would jeopardise the successful completion of the proposal;

3. explaining;

   a. why the cancellation is in the best interests of those to whom the issuer or its directors have responsibilities (including the bodies of securities holders and creditors, taken as a whole); and

   b. why the approval of shareholders or, in the case of certificates representing shares, holders of certificates will not be sought prior to the cancellation of listing; and

4. giving at least 20 business days notice of the intended cancellation.

5.2.7A  R  

Where an investment entity no longer has a premium listing of equity shares it must apply under LR 5.2.8 R for cancellation of the listing of any other class of listed equity shares.

Requirements for cancellation of other securities

5.2.8  R  

An issuer that wishes the FCA to cancel the listing of listed securities (other than securities with a premium listing) must notify a RIS, giving at least 20 business days notice of the intended cancellation but is not required to obtain the approval of the holders of those securities contemplated in LR 5.2.5 R (2) or (2A).

5.2.9  R  

Issuers with debt securities falling under LR 5.2.8 R must also notify, in accordance with the terms and conditions of the issue of those securities, holders of those securities or a representative of the holders, such as a trustee, of intended cancellation of those securities, but the prior approval of the holders of those securities in a general meeting need not be obtained.

Cancellation in relation to takeover offers: offeror interested in 50% or less of voting rights

5.2.10  R  

LR 5.2.5 R does not apply to the cancellation of securities with a premium listing in the case of a takeover offer if:

1. the offeror or any controlling shareholder who is an offeror is interested in 50% or less of the voting rights of an issuer before announcing its firm intention to make its takeover offer;

2. the offeror has by virtue of its shareholdings and acceptances of its takeover offer, acquired or agreed to acquire issued share capital carrying 75% of the voting rights of the issuer; and
(3) the offeror has stated in the offer document or any subsequent circular sent to the holders of the shares that a notice period of not less than 20 business days prior to cancellation will commence either on the offeror obtaining the required 75% as described in LR 5.2.10 R (2) or on the first date of issue of compulsory acquisition notices under section 979 of the Companies Act 2006 (Right of offeror to buy out minority shareholder).

5.2.10A R

For the purposes of LR 5.2.10 R (3), the offer document or circular must make clear that the notice period begins only when the offeror has announced that it has acquired or agreed to acquire shares representing 75% of the voting rights.

5.2.11 R

The issuer must notify shareholders and, in the case of certificates representing shares, holders of certificates that the required 75% has been obtained and that the notice period has commenced and of the anticipated date of cancellation, or the explanatory letter or other material accompanying the section 979 notice must state that the notice period has commenced and the anticipated date of cancellation.

Cancellation in relation to takeover offers: offeror interested in more than 50% of voting rights

5.2.11A R

LR 5.2.5 R does not apply to the cancellation of securities with a premium listing in the case of a takeover offer if:

1. the offeror or any controlling shareholder who is an offeror is interested in more than 50% of the voting rights of an issuer before announcing its firm intention to make its takeover offer;

2. the offeror has by virtue of its shareholdings and acceptances of its takeover offer, acquired or agreed to acquire issued share capital carrying 75% of the voting rights of the issuer;

3. the offeror has obtained acceptances of its takeover offer or acquired or agreed to acquire shares from independent shareholders that represent a majority of the voting rights held by the independent shareholders on the date its firm intention to make its takeover offer was announced; and

4. the offeror has stated in the offer document or any subsequent circular sent to the holders of the shares that a notice period of not less than 20 business days prior to cancellation will commence either on the offeror obtaining the relevant shareholding and acceptances as described in LR 5.2.11A R (2) or (3) or on the first date of issue of compulsory acquisition notices under section 979 of the Companies Act 2006.

5.2.11B R

For the purposes of LR 5.2.11A R (4), the offer document or circular must make clear that the notice period begins only when the offeror has announced that it has acquired or agreed to acquire shares representing 75% of the voting rights and, if relevant, has obtained acceptances of its takeover offer or acquired or agreed to acquire shares from independent shareholders.
shareholders that represent a majority of the voting rights held by the independent shareholders.

5.2.11C R The issuer must notify shareholders and, in the case of certificates representing shares, holders of certificates that the relevant thresholds described in ■ LR 5.2.11A R (2) to (3) have been obtained and that the notice period has commenced and of the anticipated date of cancellation, or the explanatory letter or other material accompanying the section 979 notice must state that the notice period has commenced and the anticipated date of cancellation.

5.2.11D R [deleted]

Cancellation as a result of schemes of arrangement etc

5.2.12 R ■ LR 5.2.5 R and ■ LR 5.2.8 R do not apply to the cancellation of equity shares and certificates representing shares as a result of:

(1) a takeover or restructuring of the issuer effected by a scheme of arrangement under Part 26 of the Companies Act 2006; or

(2) an administration or liquidation of the issuer pursuant to a court order under the Insolvency Act 1986, Building Societies Act 1986, Water Industry Act 1991, Banking Act 2009, Energy Act 2011 or the Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011; or

(3) the appointment of an administrator under paragraphs 14 (appointment by holder of floating charge) or 22 (appointment by company or directors) of Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986; or

(4) a resolution for winding up being passed under section 84 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or

(5) the appointment of a provisional liquidator by the court under section 135 of the Insolvency Act 1986; or

(6) a company voluntary arrangement pursuant to Part 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986, subject to the time limits for the challenge of decisions made set out in Part 1 of the Insolvency Act 1986 having expired; or

(7) statutory winding up or reconstruction measures in relation to an overseas issuer under equivalent overseas legislation having similar effect to those set out in (1) to (6).

5.2.13 G In determining whether the statutory winding up or reconstruction measures in relation to an overseas issuer under equivalent overseas legislation have a similar effect to those set out in ■ LR 5.2.12R (1) to ■ LR 5.2.12R (6), the FCA will in particular have regard to whether those procedures require a court order, the approval of 75% of the shareholders entitled to vote on the resolution, or a formal declaration of the overseas issuer’s insolvency or inability to pay its debts.
5.3 Requests to cancel or suspend

Information to be included in request to suspend or cancel

A request by an issuer for the listing of its securities to be suspended or cancelled must be in writing and must include:

1. the issuer's name;
2. details of the securities to which it relates and the RIEs on which they are traded;
3. a clear explanation of the background and reasons for the request;
4. the date on which the issuer requests the suspension or cancellation to take effect;
5. for a suspension, the time the issuer wants the suspension to take effect;
6. if relevant, a copy of any circular or announcement or other document upon which the issuer is relying;
7. if relevant, evidence of any resolution required under LR 5.2.5 R;
8. if being made by an agent on behalf of the issuer, confirmation that the agent has the issuer's authority to make it;
9. the name and contact details of the person at the issuer (or, if appropriate, an agent) with whom the FCA should liaise in relation to the request;
10. if the issuer is making a conditional request, a clear statement of the applicable conditions;
11. a copy of any announcement the issuer proposes to notify to a RIS that it is relying on in making its request to suspend or cancel; and
12. a copy of any announcement the issuer proposes to notify to a RIS announcing the suspension or cancellation.

The issuer must also include with a request to cancel the listing of its securities the following:

1. if the cancellation is to take effect after the completion of the compulsory acquisition procedures under Chapter 3 of Part 28 of the
Companies Act 2006, a copy of the notice sent to dissenting shareholders of the offeree together with written confirmation that there have been no objections made to the court within the prescribed period;

(2) for a cancellation referred to in § LR 5.2.10 R or § LR 5.2.11A R an extract from, or a copy of, the offer document or relevant circular clearly showing the intention to cancel the offeree’s listing and a copy of the announcement stating the date on which the cancellation was expected to take effect; and

(3) if a cancellation is to take place after a scheme of arrangement becomes effective under section 899 of the Companies Act 2006 and a new company is to be listed as a result of that scheme, either:

(a) a copy of the certificate from the Registrar of Companies that the scheme has become effective; or

(b) documents which demonstrate adequately that the scheme will become effective on a specified date in the future.

5.3.3 Announcements referred to in § LR 5.3.1 R (12) should be issued after the dealing notice issued on a RIS announcing the suspension or cancellation.

Timing of suspension requests

5.3.4 A written request by an issuer to have the listing of its securities suspended should be made as soon as practicable. Suspension requests received for the opening of the market should allow sufficient time for the FCA to deal with the request before trading starts.

Timing of cancellation requests

5.3.5 A written request by an issuer to have the listing of its securities cancelled must be made not less than 24 hours before the cancellation is expected to take effect.

5.3.6 Cancellations will only be specified to take effect when the market opens on a specified day. An issuer should therefore ensure that all accompanying information has been provided to the FCA well before the date on which the issuer wishes the cancellation to take effect and at the very latest by 3 p.m. on the business day before it is to take effect. If the information is received after 3:00 p.m. on the day before the issuer wishes the cancellation to take effect, it will normally be specified to take effect at the start of the business day following the next day.

Withdrawing request

5.3.7 (1) If an issuer requests the FCA to suspend or cancel the listing of its securities, it may withdraw its request at any time before the suspension or cancellation takes effect. The withdrawal request should initially be made by telephone and then confirmed in writing as soon as possible, with an explanation of the reasons for the withdrawal.
(2) Even if an issuer withdraws its request, the FCA may still suspend or cancel the listing of the securities if it considers it is necessary to do so.

(3) If an issuer has published either a statement or a circular that states that the issuer is, or intends, to seek a suspension or cancellation and the issuer no longer intends to do so, it should, as soon as possible, notify a RIS with a statement to that effect.

Notice of cancellation or suspension

If an issuer requests the FCA to suspend or cancel the listing of its securities under LR 5.3.1 R and the FCA agrees to do so, the notification given by the FCA to the issuer will include the following information:

(1) the date on which the suspension or cancellation took effect or will take effect;

(2) details of the suspension or cancellation; and

(3) in relation to requests for suspension, details of the issuer’s right to apply for the suspension of its listed securities to be cancelled.
5.4 Restoring listing

Revoking a cancellation of listing

5.4.1 If an issuer has the listing of its securities cancelled, it may only have them readmitted to the official list by re-applying for their listing.

Restoring a listing that is suspended

5.4.2 The FCA may restore the listing of any securities that have been suspended if it considers that the smooth operation of the market is no longer jeopardised or if the suspension is no longer required to protect investors. The FCA may restore the listing even though the issuer does not request it.

Requests to restore

5.4.3 (1) An issuer that has the listing of any of its securities suspended may request the FCA to have them restored.

(2) The request should be made sufficiently in advance of the time and date the issuer wishes the securities to be restored.

(3) Requests received for when the market opens should allow sufficient time for the FCA to deal with the request.

(4) The request may be an oral request. The FCA may require documentary evidence that the events that lead to the suspension are no longer current (for example, financial reports have been published or an appropriate announcement has been made) to process the request.

(5) Even if restoration is required urgently, it will normally take up to 30 minutes to be effected.

(6) The FCA will issue a dealing notice on a RIS announcing the restoration.

Refusal of request to restore

5.4.4 The FCA will refuse a request to restore the listing of securities if it is not satisfied of the matters set out in LR 5.4.2 R.
Withdrawal of a request to restore securities

5.4.5

(1) If an issuer has requested the FCA to restore the listing of any securities, it may withdraw its request at any time while the securities are still suspended. The withdrawal request should initially be made by telephone and then confirmed in writing as soon as possible.

(2) Even if a request to restore has been withdrawn, the FCA may restore the listing of securities if it believes the circumstances justify it.

Restoring listing of securitised derivatives

5.4.6

(1) If an underlying instrument is restored, the securitised derivative's listing will normally be restored.

(2) For a securitised derivative relating to a basket of underlying instruments that has been suspended, the securitised derivative's listing may be restored by the FCA, irrespective of whether or not the underlying instrument has been restored, if:

   (a) the issuer of the securitised derivative confirms to the FCA that despite the relevant underlying instrument(s) suspension a market in the securitised derivative will continue to be made; and

   (b) the FCA is satisfied that restoring the securitised derivative is not inconsistent with either the protection of investors or the smooth operation of the market.

5.4.7

For a miscellaneous security that carries a right to buy or subscribe for another security, the miscellaneous security's listing will be restored if the security over which the miscellaneous security carries a right to buy or subscribe is restored.
5.4A Transfer between listing categories

Application

This section applies to an issuer that wishes to transfer the category of its listing from:

1. a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
2. a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (investment company); or
3. a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
4. a standard listing (certificates representing certain securities) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
5. a premium listing (commercial company) to a standard listing (shares); or
6. a premium listing (investment company) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
7. a premium listing (commercial company) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
8. a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
9. a premium listing (investment company) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
10. a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a premium listing (investment company); or
11. a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a standard listing (shares); or
12. a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a standard listing (certificates representing certain securities).
An issuer will only be able to transfer a listing of its equity shares from a premium listing (investment company) to a standard listing (shares) if it has ceased to be an investment entity (for example if it has become a commercial company) or if it continues to have a premium listing of a class of equity shares. This is because LR 14.1.1 R provides that LR 14 does not apply to equity shares of an investment entity without a premium listing of equity shares.

Initial notification to the FCA

(1) If an issuer wishes to transfer the category of its listing it must notify the FCA of the proposal.

(2) The notification must be made as early as possible and in any event not less than 20 business days before it sends the circular required under LR 5.4A.4 R (2)(a) or publishes the announcement required under LR 5.4A.5 R (2).

(3) The notification must include:
   (a) an explanation of why the issuer is seeking the transfer;
   (b) if a sponsor’s letter is not required under LR 8.4.14R(1), an eligibility letter setting out how the issuer satisfies each listing rule requirement relevant to the category of listing to which it wishes to transfer;
   (c) a proposed timetable for the transfer; and
   (d) if an announcement is required to be published under LR 5.4A.5R (2), a draft of that announcement.

Shareholder approval required in certain cases

(1) This rule applies to a transfer of the listing of:
   (a) equity shares with a premium listing into or out of the category of premium listing (investment company); or
   (b) equity shares with a premium listing out of the category of premium listing (commercial company); or
   (c) equity shares or certificates representing shares with a premium listing out of the category of premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) into the category of standard listing (shares) or standard listing (certificates representing certain securities).

(2) The issuer must:
   (a) send a circular to the holders of the equity shares or the certificates representing shares, as applicable;
   (b) notify a RIS, at the same time as the circular is despatched to the relevant holders of the equity shares or the certificates representing shares (as applicable), of the intended transfer and of the notice period and meeting date; and
   (c) notify a RIS of the passing of the resolution required under (3) below.
(3) (a) In the case of a transfer of the listing of equity shares with a premium listing into or out of the category of premium listing (investment company), the issuer must obtain at a general meeting the prior approval of a resolution for the transfer from a majority of not less than 75% of the votes attaching to the shares voted on the resolution; or

(b) in the case of a transfer of the listing of equity shares with a premium listing (commercial company) into the category of standard listing (shares), the issuer must obtain at a general meeting the prior approval of a resolution for the transfer from:

(i) a majority of not less than 75% of the votes attaching to the shares voted on the resolution; and

(ii) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority of the votes attaching to the shares of independent shareholders voted on the resolution; or

(c) in the case of a transfer of the listing of equity shares with a premium listing (commercial company) into the category of premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company), the issuer must obtain at a general meeting the prior approval of a resolution for the transfer from:

(i) a majority of not less than 75% of the votes attaching to the shares voted on the resolution; and

(ii) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority of the votes attaching to the shares of independent shareholders voted on the resolution; or

(d) in the case of a transfer of the listing of equity shares with a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) into the category of standard listing (shares), the issuer must obtain at a general meeting the prior approval of a resolution for the transfer from:

(i) a majority of not less than 75% of the votes attaching to the shares voted on the resolution; and

(ii) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority of the votes attaching to the shares of independent shareholders voted on the resolution; or

(e) in the case of a transfer of the listing of certificates representing shares with a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) into the category of standard listing (certificates representing certain securities), the issuer must obtain, at a meeting of the holders of the certificates, the prior approval of a resolution for the transfer from:

(i) a majority of not less than 75% in value of the certificates representing shares in issue at the time of the meeting that are voted on the resolution; and

(ii) where an issuer has a controlling shareholder, a majority in value of the certificates representing shares in issue at the time of the meeting that are:

(A) held by holders of certificates other than the controlling shareholder; and

(B) that are voted on the resolution.
Announcement required in other cases

5.4A.5  
(1) This rule applies to any transfer of a listing of equity shares or certificates representing shares other than a transfer referred to in LR 5.4A.4 R (1).

(2) The issuer must publish an announcement on a RIS giving notice of its intention to transfer its listing category.

Approval and contents of circular

5.4A.6  
The circular referred to in LR 5.4A.4 R must:

(1) comply with the requirements of LR 13.1, LR 13.2 and LR 13.3;

(2) be approved by the FCA before it is circulated or published; and

(3) include the anticipated transfer date (which must be not less than 20 business days after the passing of the resolution under LR 5.4A.4 R).

Approval and contents of announcement

5.4A.7  
The announcement referred to in LR 5.4A.5 R (2) must:

(1) contain the same substantive information as would be required under LR 13.1 and LR 13.3 if it were a circular but modified as necessary so it is clear that no vote of holders of the relevant securities is required; and

(2) include the anticipated transfer date (which must be not less than 20 business days after the date the announcement is published).

5.4A.8  
The announcement must be approved by the FCA before it is published.

Specific information required in circular or announcement

5.4A.9  
Information required under LR 13.3.1R(1) (Contents of all circulars) to be included in the circular or announcement should include an explanation of:

(1) the background and reasons for the proposed transfer;

(2) any changes to the issuer's business that have been made or are proposed to be made in connection with the proposal;

(3) the effect of the transfer on the issuer's obligations under the listing rules;

(4) how the issuer will meet any new eligibility requirements, for example working capital requirements, that the FCA must be satisfied of under LR 5.4A.12 R (3); and

(5) any other matter that the FCA may reasonably require.
Applying for the transfer

If an issuer has initially notified the FCA under \( \text{LR 5.4A.3 R} \) it may apply to the FCA to transfer the listing of its securities from one category to another. The application must include:

1. the issuer’s name;
2. details of the securities to which the transfer relates;
3. the date on which the issuer wishes the transfer to take effect;
4. a copy of any circular, announcement or other document on which the issuer is relying;
5. if relevant, evidence of any resolution required under \( \text{LR 5.4A.4 R} \);
6. if an agent is making the application on the issuer's behalf, confirmation that the agent has the issuer's authority to do so;
7. the name and contact details of the person at the issuer (or, if appropriate an agent) with whom the FCA should liaise in relation to the application; and
8. a copy of any announcement the issuer proposes to notify to a RIS informing the market that the transfer has taken place.

Issuer must comply with eligibility requirements

1. An issuer applying for a transfer of its securities must comply with all eligibility requirements that would apply if the issuer was seeking admission to listing of the securities to the category of listing to which it wishes to transfer.

2. For the purposes of applying the eligibility requirements referred to in (1) to a transfer then, unless the context otherwise requires, a reference in such a requirement:
   a. to the admission of securities is to be taken to be a reference to the transfer of the securities; and
   b. to a prospectus or listing particulars is to be taken to be a reference to the circular or announcement.

Approval of transfer

If an issuer applies under \( \text{LR 5.4A.10 R} \), the FCA may approve the transfer if it is satisfied that:

1. the issuer has complied with \( \text{LR 5.4A.4 R} \) or \( \text{LR 5.4A.5 R} \) (whichever is relevant);
2. the 20 business day period referred to in \( \text{LR 5.4A.6 R} \) or \( \text{LR 5.4A.7 R} \) (whichever is relevant) has elapsed; and
3. the issuer and the securities will comply with all eligibility requirements that would apply if the issuer was seeking admission to
listings of the securities to the category of listing to which it wishes to transfer.

5.4A.13 The FCA will not generally reassess compliance with eligibility requirements (for example LR 6.7.1R(Working capital) if the issuer has previously been assessed by the FCA as meeting those requirements under its existing listing category when its securities were listed.

When transfer takes effect

5.4A.14 (1) If the FCA approves a transfer of a listing then it must announce its decision on a RIS.

(2) The transfer becomes effective when the FCA's decision to approve is announced on the RIS.

(3) The issuer must continue to comply with the requirements of its existing category of listing until the decision is announced on the RIS.

(4) After the decision is announced the issuer must comply with the requirements of the category of listing to which it has transferred.

Directive obligations

5.4A.15 An issuer may take steps, in connection with a transfer, which require it to consider whether a prospectus is necessary, for example, if the company or its capital is reconstituted in a way that could amount to an offer of transferable securities to the public. The issuer and its advisers should consider whether directive obligations may be triggered.

Transfer as an alternative to cancellation

5.4A.16 There may be situations in which an issuer's business has changed over a period of time so that it no longer meets the requirements of the applicable listing category against which it was initially assessed for listing. In those situations, the FCA may consider cancelling the listing of the equity shares or suggest to the issuer that, as an alternative, it applies for a transfer of its listing category.

5.4A.17 There may be situations in which an issuer with a listing of securities in the category of premium listed (sovereign controlled commercial company) no longer has a sovereign controlling shareholder. In those situations, the FCA may consider cancelling the listing of the securities or suggest to the issuer that, as an alternative, it applies for a transfer of its listing category.
5.5 Miscellaneous

Decision-making procedures for suspension, cancellation etc

5.5.1 The decision-making procedures that the FCA will follow when it cancels, suspends or refuses a request by an issuer to suspend, cancel or restore listing are set out in DEPP (Decision Procedure and Penalties).

Suspension, cancellation or restoration by overseas exchange or authority

5.5.2 An issuer must inform the FCA if its listing has been suspended, cancelled or restored by an overseas exchange or overseas authority.

5.5.3 (1) The FCA will not automatically suspend, cancel or restore the listing of securities at the request of an overseas exchange or overseas authority (for example, if listing of a listed issuer’s securities are suspended, cancelled or restored on its home exchange).

(2) The FCA will not normally suspend the listing of securities where there is a trading halt for the security on its home exchange.

(3) If a listed issuer requests a suspension, cancellation or restoration of the listing of its securities, after a suspension, cancellation or restoration on its home exchange, the issuer should send to the FCA written confirmation:

- (a) that the suspension, cancellation or restoration of listing on its home exchange has become effective; or
- (b) if it has not yet become effective, of the time and date it is proposed to become effective.

(4) If an overseas exchange or competent authority requests the FCA to suspend, cancel or restore the listing of securities, the FCA will, wherever practical, contact the issuer or its sponsor before it suspends, cancels or restores the listing. Therefore, issuers are encouraged to contact the FCA at the same time as they contact their home exchange.

(5) If the FCA is unable to contact the issuer or sponsor, it will suspend, cancel or restore the listing of the securities when it is satisfied that the listing of the relevant securities has been, or will be, suspended, cancelled or restored on their home exchange.
5.6 Reverse takeovers

Application

5.6.1 This section applies to an issuer with:

(1) a premium listing;

(2) a standard listing (shares); or

(3) a standard listing of certificates representing equity securities.

Categories of reverse takeover to which this section does not apply

5.6.2 LR 5.6 does not apply where an issuer acquires the shares or certificates representing equity securities of a target with the same category of listing as the issuer.

Class 1 requirements

5.6.3 Notwithstanding the effect of LR 5.6.2, an issuer with a premium listing must in relation to a reverse takeover comply with the requirements of LR 10.5 (Class 1 requirements) for that transaction.

Definitions

5.6.4 A reverse takeover is a transaction, whether effected by way of a direct acquisition by the issuer or a subsidiary, an acquisition by a new holding company of the issuer or otherwise, of a business, a company or assets:

(1) where any percentage ratio is 100% or more; or

(2) which in substance results in a fundamental change in the business or in a change in board or voting control of the issuer.

When calculating the percentage ratio, the issuer must apply the class tests and LR 10.2.10R (Aggregating transactions).

5.6.5 For the purpose of LR 5.6.4 (2), the FCA considers that the following factors are indicators of a fundamental change:

(1) the extent to which the transaction will change the strategic direction or nature of its business; or
(2) whether its business will be part of a different industry sector following the completion of the transaction; or

(3) whether its business will deal with fundamentally different suppliers and end users.

5.6.5A A shell company is an issuer whose:

(1) assets consist solely or predominantly of cash or short-dated securities; or

(2) predominant purpose or objective is to undertake an acquisition or merger, or a series of acquisitions or mergers.

Requirement for a suspension

A shell company, or in the case of a shell company with a premium listing, its sponsor, must contact the FCA as early as possible:

(1) before announcing a reverse takeover which has been agreed or is in contemplation, to discuss whether a suspension of listing is appropriate; or

(2) where details of the reverse takeover have leaked, to request a suspension.

Examples of where the FCA will consider that a reverse takeover is in contemplation include situations where:

(1) the shell company has approached the target's board;

(2) the shell company has entered into an exclusivity period with a target; or

(3) the shell company has been given access to begin due diligence work (whether or not on a limited basis).

Generally, when a reverse takeover between a shell company and a target is announced or leaked, there will be insufficient publicly available information about the proposed transaction and the shell company will be unable to assess accurately its financial position and inform the market accordingly. In this case, the FCA will often consider that suspension will be appropriate, as set out in §LR 5.1.2G (3) and §(4). However, if the FCA is satisfied that there is sufficient publicly available information about the proposed transaction it may agree with the shell company that a suspension is not required.

§LR 5.6.10 G to §LR 5.6.18 R set out circumstances in which the FCA will generally be satisfied that a suspension is not required.
Reverse takeover by a shell company: target admitted to a regulated market

5.6.10 The FCA will generally be satisfied that there is sufficient information in the market about the proposed transaction if:

(1) the target has shares or certificates representing equity securities admitted to a regulated market; and

(2) the shell company makes an announcement stating that the target has complied with the disclosure requirements applicable on that regulated market and providing details of where information disclosed pursuant to those requirements can be obtained.

5.6.11 An announcement made for the purpose of LR 5.6.10G (2) must be published by means of an RIS.

Reverse takeover by a shell company: target subject to the disclosure regime of another market

5.6.12 The FCA will generally be satisfied that there is sufficient publicly available information in the market about the proposed transaction if the target has securities admitted to an investment exchange or trading platform that is not a regulated market and the shell company:

(1) confirms, in a form acceptable to the FCA, that the disclosure requirements in relation to financial information and inside information of the investment exchange or trading platform on which the target’s securities are admitted are not materially different from the disclosure requirements; and

(2) makes an announcement to the effect that:

(a) the target has complied with the disclosure requirements applicable on the investment exchange or trading platform to which its securities are admitted and provides details of where information disclosed pursuant to those requirements can be obtained; and

(b) there are no material differences between those disclosure requirements and the disclosure requirements under DTR.

5.6.13 Where a shell company has a premium listing, a written confirmation provided for the purpose of LR 5.6.12G (1) must be given by the shell company’s sponsor.

5.6.14 An announcement made for the purpose of LR 5.6.12G (2) must be published by means of an RIS.

Reverse takeover by a shell company: target not subject to a public disclosure regime

5.6.15 Where the target in a reverse takeover by a shell company is not subject to a public disclosure regime, or if the target has securities admitted on an investment exchange or trading platform that is not a regulated market but
the *shell company* is not able to give the confirmation and make the announcement contemplated by [LR 5.6.12 G](#), the FCA will generally be satisfied that there is sufficient publicly available information in the market about the proposed transaction such that a suspension is not required where the *shell company* makes an announcement containing:

1. financial information on the *target* covering the last three years. Generally, the FCA would consider the following information to be sufficient:
   - (a) profit and loss information to at least operating profit level;
   - (b) balance sheet information, highlighting at least net assets and liabilities;
   - (c) relevant cash flow information; and
   - (d) a description of the key differences between the *shell company*'s accounting policies and the policies used to present the financial information on the *target*;

2. a description of the *target* to include key non-financial operating or performance measures appropriate to the *target*'s business operations and the information as required under Annex 1 Section 10 (Trend information) of the *PR Regulation* (see [PRR Appendix 2](#)) for the *target*;

3. a declaration that the *directors* of the *shell company* consider that the announcement contains sufficient information about the business to be acquired to provide a properly informed basis for assessing its financial position; and

4. a declaration confirming that the *shell company* has made the necessary arrangements with the *target* vendors to enable it to keep the market informed without delay of any developments concerning the *target* that would be required to be released were the *target* part of the *shell company*.

**5.6.16** An announcement made for the purpose of [LR 5.6.15 G](#) must be published by means of an *RIS*.

**5.6.17** Where a *shell company* has a *premium listing*, a *sponsor* must provide written confirmation to the FCA that in its opinion, it is reasonable for the *shell company* to provide the declarations described in [LR 5.6.15G (3)](##) and [LR 5.6.15G (4)](##).

**5.6.18** Where the FCA has agreed that a suspension is not necessary as a result of an announcement made for the purpose of [LR 5.6.15 G](#) the *shell company* must comply with the obligation under article 17(1) of the *Market Abuse Regulation* on the basis that the *target* already forms part of the enlarged group.

**Cancellation of listing**

**5.6.19** The FCA will generally seek to cancel the listing of an issuer’s equity shares or certificates representing equity securities when the issuer completes a reverse takeover.
SUSPENDING, CANCELLING AND RESTORING LISTING AND REVERSE TAKEOVERS: ALL SECURITIES

5.6.20 G LR 5.6.23 G to LR 5.6.29 G set out circumstances in which the FCA will generally be satisfied that a cancellation is not required.

5.6.21 R Where the issuer's listing is cancelled following completion of a reverse takeover, the issuer must re-apply for the listing of the shares or certificates representing equity securities and satisfy the relevant requirements for listing, except that for an issuer with a premium listing, LR 6.2.1R(3) and LR 6.2.4R(2) will not apply in relation to the issuer's accounts.

5.6.22 G Notwithstanding LR 5.6.21 R, financial information provided in relation to the target will need to satisfy LR 6.2.1R(3) and LR 6.2.4R(2).

Acquisitions of targets from different listing categories: issuer maintaining its listing category

5.6.23 G Where an issuer acquires the shares or certificates representing equity securities of a target with a different listing category from its own and the issuer wishes to maintain its existing listing category, the FCA will generally be satisfied that a cancellation is not required on completion of a reverse takeover if:

1. the issuer will continue to be eligible for its existing listing category following completion of the transaction;
2. the issuer provides an eligibility letter setting out how the issuer as enlarged by the acquisition satisfies each listing rule requirement that is relevant to it being eligible for its existing listing category; and
3. the issuer makes an announcement or publishes a circular explaining:
   a. the background and reasons for the acquisition;
   b. any changes to the acquiring issuer's business that have been made or are proposed to be made in connection with the acquisition;
   c. the effect of the transaction on the acquiring issuer's obligations under the listing rules;
   d. (where appropriate) how the acquiring issuer will continue to meet the eligibility requirements referred to in LR 5.6.21 R; and
   e. any other matter that the FCA may reasonably require.

5.6.24 R An announcement or circular published for the purpose of LR 5.6.23 G must be published by means of an RIS.

5.6.25 R An eligibility letter prepared for the purposes of LR 5.6.23 G must be provided to the FCA not less than 20 business days prior to the announcement of the transaction referred to in LR 5.6.24 R.

5.6.26 R Where an issuer has a premium listing, the eligibility letter provided for the purposes of LR 5.6.23 G must be provided by a sponsor.
Acquisitions of targets from different listing categories: issuer changing listing category

5.6.27 The FCA will generally be satisfied that a cancellation is not required on completion of a reverse takeover if the target is listed with a different listing category from that of the issuer and the issuer wishes to transfer its listing to a different listing category in conjunction with the acquisition and the issuer as enlarged by the relevant acquisition complies with the relevant requirements of LR 5.4A to transfer to a different listing category.

5.6.28 An issuer wishing to transfer a listing of its equity shares from a premium listing (investment company) to a standard listing (shares) should note LR 5.4A.2 G which sets out limitations resulting from the application of LR 14.1.1 R (application of the listing rules to a company with or applying for a standard listing of shares).

5.6.29 Where an issuer is applying LR 5.4A in order to avoid a cancellation as contemplated by LR 5.6.27 G, the FCA will normally waive the requirement for shareholder approval under LR 5.4A.4R (2)(c) where the issuer is obtaining separate shareholder approval for the acquisition.
Chapter 6

Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)
6.1 Application

6.1.1 This chapter applies to an applicant for the admission of equity shares to premium listing (commercial company) except where:

(1) the applicant meets the following conditions:
   (a) it has an existing premium listing (commercial company) of equity shares;
   (b) it is applying for the admission of equity shares of the same class as the shares that have been admitted to premium listing; and
   (c) it is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover; or

(2) the following conditions are met:
   (a) a company has an existing premium listing (commercial company) of equity shares;
   (b) the applicant is a new holding company of the company in (a); and
   (c) the company in (a) is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover.

Applicant must satisfy requirements in this chapter

6.1.2 An applicant to whom this chapter applies must satisfy the requirements in this chapter (in addition to those in ■ LR 2).
6.2 Historical financial information requirements

**Content of historical financial information**

6.2.1 An applicant must have published or filed historical financial information that:

1. covers at least three years;
   
   [Note: article 44 of the CARD]

2. represents at least 75% of the applicant's business for the period in (1);

3. unless LR 5.6.21R applies, has a latest balance sheet date that is not more than:
   
   (a) six months before the date of the prospectus or listing particulars for the relevant shares; and

   (b) nine months before the date the shares are admitted to listing; and

4. includes the consolidated accounts for the applicant and all its subsidiary undertakings.

6.2.2

1. In determining what amounts to 75% of the applicant's business for the purpose of LR 6.2.1R(2), the FCA will consider the size, in aggregate, of all of the acquisitions that the applicant has entered into during the period required by LR 6.2.1R(1) and up to the date of the prospectus or listing particulars, relative to the size of the applicant as enlarged by the acquisitions.

2. In ascertaining the size of the acquisitions relative to the applicant for the purposes of LR 6.2.1R(2), the FCA will take into account factors such as the assets, profitability and market capitalisation of the businesses.

3. The figures used should be the latest available for the acquired entity and the applicant as enlarged by the acquisition or acquisitions.

6.2.3 Where an applicant has made an acquisition or series of acquisitions such that its own consolidated financial information is insufficient to meet the 75% requirement in LR 6.2.1R(2), there must be historical financial information relating to the acquired entity or entities which has been published or filed and that:
(1) covers the period from at least three years prior to the date under LR 6.2.1R(3) up to the earlier of:
   (a) the date in LR 6.2.1R(3); or
   (b) the date of acquisition by the applicant;

(2) is prepared and presented in a form that is consistent with the accounting policies adopted in the financial information required by LR 6.2.1R; and

(3) in aggregate with its own historical financial information represents at least 75% of the enlarged applicant's business for the period in LR 6.2.1R(1).

**Audit requirements for historical financial information**

The historical financial information in LR 6.2.1R and LR 6.2.3R must:

(1) have been audited or reported on in accordance with the standards acceptable under Section 18 of Annex 1 of the PR Regulation; and

(2) not be subject to a modified report, unless the circumstances set out in LR 6.2.5G apply.

The FCA may accept that LR 6.2.4R(2) has been satisfied where a modified report is present only as a result of:

(1) the presence of an emphasis-of-matter paragraph which arises in any of the earlier periods required by LR 6.2.1R and the opinion on the final period is unmodified; or

(2) the opinion on the historical financial information for the final period under LR 6.2.1R includes an emphasis-of-matter paragraph with regard to going concern and LR 6.7.1R (Working capital) is complied with.

An applicant must:

(1) take all reasonable steps to ensure that the person providing the opinion in LR 6.2.4R(1) is independent of it; and

(2) obtain written confirmation from the person providing the opinion in LR 6.2.4R(1) that it complies with guidelines on independence issued or approved by its national accountancy or auditing bodies.
6.3 Revenue earning track record requirement

6.3.1 The historical financial information required under ■ LR 6.2.1R and ■ LR 6.2.3R must:

demonstrate that the applicant has a revenue earning track record; and

put prospective investors in a position to make an informed assessment of the business for which admission is sought.

6.3.2 (1) The purpose of ■ LR 6.2.1R(2), ■ LR 6.2.3R, and ■ LR 6.3.1R is to ensure that the applicant has representative financial information throughout the period required by ■ LR 6.2.1R(1) and ■ LR 6.2.3R and to assist prospective investors to make a reasonable assessment of what the future prospects of the applicant’s business might be. Investors are then able to consider the applicant’s historical financial information in light of its particular competitive advantages, the outlook for the sector in which it operates and the general macroeconomic climate.

(2) The FCA may consider that an applicant does not have representative historical financial information and that its equity shares are not eligible for a premium listing if a significant part or all of the applicant’s business has one or more of the following characteristics:

(a) a business strategy that places significant emphasis on the development or marketing of products or services which have not formed a significant part of the applicant’s historical financial information;

(b) the value of the business on admission will be determined, to a significant degree, by reference to future developments rather than past performance;

(c) the relationship between the value of the business and its revenue or profit-earning record is significantly different from those of similar companies in the same sector;

(d) there is no record of consistent revenue, cash flow or profit growth throughout the period of the historical financial information;

(e) the applicant’s business has undergone a significant change in its scale of operations during the period of the historical financial information or is due to do so before or after admission;
(f) it has significant levels of research and development expenditure or significant levels of capital expenditure.
6.4 Independent business

6.4.1 R An applicant must demonstrate that it carries on an independent business as its main activity.

6.4.2 G LR 6.4.1R is intended to ensure that the protections afforded to holders of equity shares by the premium listing requirements are meaningful.

6.4.3 G Factors that may indicate that an applicant does not satisfy LR 6.4.1R include situations where:

1. a majority of the revenue generated by the applicant’s business is attributable to business conducted directly or indirectly with one person or group;

2. or the applicant cannot demonstrate that it has access to financing other than from one person or group; or

3. the applicant does not have:
   a. strategic control over the commercialisation of its products; or
   b. strategic control over its ability to earn revenue; or
   c. freedom to implement its business strategy.
6.5 Controlling shareholders

6.5.1 An applicant with a controlling shareholder must demonstrate that, despite having a controlling shareholder, the applicant is able to carry on an independent business as its main activity.

6.5.2 LR 6.5.1R is intended to ensure that the protections afforded to holders of equity shares by the premium listing requirements are meaningful.

6.5.3 Factors that may indicate that an applicant does not satisfy the requirement in LR 6.5.1R (even where the agreement in LR 6.5.4R is in place) include:

1. an applicant has granted or may be required to grant security over its business in connection with the funding of a controlling shareholder or a member of a controlling shareholder’s group; or
2. a controlling shareholder (or any associate thereof) appears to be able to influence the operations of the applicant outside its normal governance structures or via material shareholdings in one or more significant subsidiary undertakings; or
3. a controlling shareholder appears to be able to exercise improper influence over the applicant; or
4. an applicant cannot demonstrate that it has access to financing other than from a controlling shareholder (or an associate thereof).

6.5.4 An applicant with a controlling shareholder upon admission must have in place a written and legally binding agreement with its controlling shareholder which is intended to ensure that the controlling shareholder complies with undertakings that:

1. transactions and arrangements with the controlling shareholder (and/or any of its associates) will be conducted at arm’s length and on normal commercial terms;
2. neither the controlling shareholder nor any of its associates will take any action that would have the effect of preventing the applicant from complying with its obligations under the listing rules; and
3. neither the controlling shareholder nor any of its associates will propose or procure the proposal of a shareholder resolution which is intended or appears to be intended to circumvent the proper application of the listing rules.
6.5.5 An applicant with more than one controlling shareholder is not required to enter into a separate agreement with each controlling shareholder if:

(1) the applicant reasonably considers, in light of its understanding of the relationship between the relevant controlling shareholders, that a controlling shareholder can procure the compliance of another controlling shareholder and that controlling shareholder's associates with the undertakings in LR 6.5.4R; and

(2) the agreement, which contains the undertakings in LR 6.5.4R, entered into with the relevant controlling shareholder also contains:

(a) a provision in which the controlling shareholder agrees to procure the compliance of a non-signing controlling shareholder and its associates with the undertakings in LR 6.5.4R; and

(b) the name of such non-signing controlling shareholder.
6.6 Control of the business

6.6.1 **R** An applicant must demonstrate that it exercises operational control over the business it carries on as its main activity.

6.6.2 **G** LR 6.6.1R is intended to ensure that the protections afforded to holders of equity shares by the premium listing requirements are meaningful.

6.6.3 **G** Factors that may indicate that an applicant does not satisfy the requirement in **LR 6.6.1R** include where the applicant’s business consists principally of holding shares in entities that it does not control, including entities where the applicant:

1. owns a minority holding of shares; or
2. is only able to exercise negative control; or
3. exercises control subject to contractual arrangements which could be altered without the applicant’s agreement or could result in a temporary or permanent loss of control.
6.7 Working capital

6.7.1 An applicant must satisfy the FCA that it and its subsidiary undertakings (if any) have sufficient working capital available for the group's requirements for at least the next 12 months from the date of publication of the prospectus or listing particulars for the shares that are being admitted.
6.8 Warrants or options to subscribe

6.8.1 The total of all issued warrants to subscribe for equity shares or options to subscribe for equity shares must not exceed 20% of the issued equity share capital (excluding treasury shares) of the applicant as at the time of issue of the warrants or options.

6.8.2 For the purpose of the 20% limit in §LR 6.8.1R, rights under employees’ share schemes are not included.
6.9 Constitutional arrangements

6.9.1 An applicant must have in place a constitution that allows it to comply with the listing rules, in particular:

(1) LR 9.2.21R to vote on matters relevant to premium listing; and

(2) for an applicant with a controlling shareholder, LR 9.2.2ER and LR 9.2.2FR concerning the election and re-election of independent directors.

Pre-emption rights

6.9.2 If the law of the country of its incorporation does not confer on shareholders rights which are at least equivalent to LR 9.3.11R, an overseas company applying for a premium listing must:

(1) ensure its constitution provides for rights which are at least equivalent to the rights provided in LR 9.3.11R (as qualified by LR 9.3.12R); and

(2) be satisfied that conferring such rights would not be incompatible with the law of the country of its incorporation.
6.10 Specialist companies: mineral companies

6.10.1 Where a mineral company applies for the admission of its equity shares to a premium listing and cannot comply with the minimum three-year period required in LR 6.2.1R(1) because it has been operating for a shorter period:

(1) the mineral company must have published or filed historical financial information since the inception of its business; and

(2) the following apply to the mineral company only with regard to the period for which it has published or filed historical financial information pursuant to (1):

(a) LR 6.2.1R(2), LR 6.2.1R(3) and LR 6.2.1R(4) (content of historical financial information); and

(b) LR 6.2.4R and LR 6.2.6R (audit requirements for historical financial information).

6.10.2 LR 6.3.1R (revenue earning track record) does not apply to a mineral company that applies for the admission of its equity shares to a premium listing.

6.10.3 (1) This rule applies if the mineral company applies for the admission of its equity shares to premium listing and cannot comply with LR 6.6.1R (control of business) because the mineral company does not hold controlling interests in a majority (by value) of the properties, fields, mines or other assets in which it has invested.

(2) The mineral company must demonstrate that it has a reasonable spread of direct interests in mineral resources and has rights to participate actively in their extraction, whether by voting or through other rights which give it influence in decisions over the timing and method of extraction of those resources.
6.11 Specialist companies: scientific research based companies

6.11.1 Where a scientific research based company applies for the admission of its equity shares to a premium listing and cannot comply with the minimum three-year period required in LR 6.2.1R(1) because it has been operating for a shorter period:

(1) the scientific research based company must have published or filed historical financial information since the inception of its business; and

(2) the following apply to the scientific research based company only with regard to the period for which it has published or filed historical financial information under (1):
   (a) LR 6.2.1R(2), LR 6.2.1R(3) and LR 6.2.1R(4) (content of historical financial information); and
   (b) LR 6.2.4R and LR 6.2.6R (audit requirements for historical financial information).

6.11.2 If the scientific research based company does not comply with either LR 6.2.1R(1) (minimum period for historical financial information) or LR 6.3.1R (revenue earning track record), it must:

(1) demonstrate its ability to attract funds from sophisticated investors prior to the marketing at the time of listing;

(2) intend to raise at least £10 million pursuant to a marketing at the time of listing;

(3) have a capitalisation, before the marketing at the time of listing, of at least £20 million (based on the issue price and excluding the value of any equity shares which have been issued in the six months before listing);

(4) have as its primary reason for listing the raising of finance to bring identified products to a stage where they can generate significant revenues; and

(5) demonstrate that it has a three year record in laboratory research and development including:
   (a) details of patents granted or details of progress of patent applications; and
   (b) the successful completion of, or the successful progression of, significant testing of the effectiveness of its products.
6.12 Specialist companies: property companies

6.12.1 Where a property company applies for the admission of its equity shares to a premium listing and cannot comply with LR 6.3.1R because it does not have a revenue earning track record:

1. the property company must demonstrate that it has three years of development of its real estate assets represented by increases of the gross asset value of its real estate assets:
   a. evidenced by the historical financial information required by LR 6.2.1R; and
   b. supported by a published property valuation report; or

2. the property company must demonstrate that 75% of the gross asset value of an applicant's real estate assets, as supported by a published property valuation report, are revenue generating at the point in time when the application for admission of the equity shares to a premium listing is made.

6.12.2 For the purposes of LR 6.12.1R, the property valuation report should be published in the applicant's prospectus.

6.12.3 Where a property company is relying on LR 6.12.1R(2) and cannot comply with LR 6.2.1R(1) because it has been operating for a shorter period:

1. the property company must have published or filed historical financial information since the inception of its business; and

2. the following apply to the property company only with regard to the period for which it has published or filed historical financial information under (1):
   a. LR 6.2.1R(2), LR 6.2.1R(3) and LR 6.2.1R(4) (content of historical financial information); and
   b. LR 6.2.4R and LR 6.2.6R (audit requirements for historical financial information).
6.13 Externally managed companies

6.13.1 An applicant must satisfy the FCA that:

(1) the discretion of its board to make strategic decisions on behalf of the applicant has not been limited or transferred to a person outside the applicant's group; and

(2) its board has the capability to act on key strategic matters in the absence of a recommendation from a person outside the applicant's group.

6.13.2 In considering whether an applicant has satisfied R LR 6.13.1R, the FCA will consider, among other things, whether the board of the applicant consists solely of non-executive directors and whether significant elements of the strategic decision-making of or planning for the applicant take place outside the applicant's group, for example with an external management company.
6.14 Shares in public hands

6.14.1 R Where an applicant is applying for the admission of a class of equity shares to premium listing, a sufficient number of shares of that class must, no later than the time of admission, be distributed to the public in one or more EEA States.

[Note: article 48 of the CARD]

6.14.2 R For the purposes of ■ LR 6.14.1R:

(1) account may also be taken of holders in one or more states that are not EEA States, if the shares are listed in the state or states;

(2) a sufficient number of shares will be taken to have been distributed to the public when 25% of the shares for which application for admission has been made are in public hands; and

(3) treasury shares are not to be taken into consideration when calculating the number of shares of the class.

[Note: article 48 of the CARD]

6.14.3 R For the purposes of ■ LR 6.14.1R and ■ LR 6.14.2R, shares are not held in public hands if they are:

(1) held, directly or indirectly by:
   (a) a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or
   (b) a person connected with a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or
   (c) the trustees of any employees’ share scheme or pension fund established for the benefit of any directors and employees of the applicant and its subsidiary undertakings; or
   (d) any person who under any agreement has a right to nominate a person to the board of directors of the applicant; or
   (e) any person or persons in the same group or persons acting in concert who have an interest in 5% or more of the shares of the relevant class;

(2) subject to a lock-up period of more than 180 calendar days.

[Note: article 48 of the CARD]
**6.14.4** When calculating the number of shares for the purposes of LR 6.14.3R(1)(e), holdings of investment managers in the same group where investment decisions are made independently by the individual in control of the relevant fund and those decisions are unfettered by the group to which the investment manager belongs will be disregarded.

**6.14.5**

(1) The FCA may modify LR 6.14.1R to accept a percentage lower than 25% if it considers that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage in view of the large number of shares of the same class and the extent of their distribution to the public.

[Note: article 48 of the CARD]

(2) In considering whether to grant a modification, the FCA may take into account the following specific factors:

(a) shares of the same class that are held (even though they are not listed) in states that are not EEA States;

(b) the number and nature of the public shareholders; and

(c) in relation to premium listing (commercial companies), whether the expected market value of the shares in public hands at admission exceeds £100 million.
6.15 Shares of a non-EEA company

6.15.1 The FCA will not admit shares of an applicant incorporated in a non-EEA State that are not listed either in its country of incorporation or in the country in which a majority of its shares are held, unless the FCA is satisfied that the absence of the listing is not due to the need to protect investors.

[Note: article 51 of the CARD]
Chapter 7

Listing Principles and Premium Listing Principles
7.1 Application and purpose

Application

7.1.1 R (1) The Listing Principles in LR 7.2.1 R apply to every listed company in respect of all its obligations arising from the listing rules, disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules.

(2) In addition to the Listing Principles referred to in (1), the Premium Listing Principles in LR 7.2.1A R apply to every listed company with a premium listing in respect of all its obligations arising from the listing rules, disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules.

Purpose

7.1.2 G The purpose of the Listing Principles and the Premium Listing Principles is to ensure that listed companies pay due regard to the fundamental role they play in maintaining market confidence and ensuring fair and orderly markets.

7.1.3 G The Listing Principles and, if applicable, the Premium Listing Principles are designed to assist listed companies in identifying their obligations and responsibilities under the listing rules, disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules. The Listing Principles and Premium Listing Principles should be interpreted together with relevant rules and guidance which underpin the Listing Principles and the Premium Listing Principles.

7.1.4 G DEPP 6 (Penalties) and EG 7 set out guidance on the consequences of breaching a Listing Principle or, if applicable, a Premium Listing Principle.
## 7.2 The Listing and Premium Listing Principles

### 7.2.1 The Listing Principles are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listing Principle</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A <em>listed company</em> must take reasonable steps to establish and maintain adequate procedures, systems and controls to enable it to comply with its obligations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A <em>listed company</em> must deal with the FCA in an open and co-operative manner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 7.2.1A The Premium Listing Principles are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Premium Listing Principle</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>A <em>listed company</em> must take reasonable steps to enable its <em>directors</em> to understand their responsibilities and obligations as <em>directors</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>A <em>listed company</em> must act with integrity towards the holders and potential holders of its <em>premium listed securities</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>All <em>equity shares</em> in a class that has been admitted to <em>premium listing</em> must carry an equal number of votes on any shareholder vote. In respect of <em>certificates representing shares</em> that have been admitted to <em>premium listing</em>, all the <em>equity shares</em> of the class which the certificates represent must carry an equal number of votes on any shareholder vote.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Where a <em>listed company</em> has more than one class of <em>securities</em> admitted to <em>premium listing</em>, the aggregate voting rights of the <em>securities</em> in each class should be broadly proportionate to the relative interests of those classes in the equity of the <em>listed company</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>A <em>listed company</em> must ensure that it treats all holders of the same class of its <em>premium listed securities</em> and its <em>listed equity shares</em> that are in the same position equally in respect of the rights attaching to those <em>premium listed securities</em> and <em>listed equity shares</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Premium Listing Principle 6

A listed company must communicate information to holders and potential holders of its premium listed securities and its listed equity shares in such a way as to avoid the creation or continuation of a false market in those premium listed securities and listed equity shares.

Guidance on the Listing and Premium Listing Principles

7.2.2 [G] Listing Principle 1 is intended to ensure that listed companies have adequate procedures, systems and controls to enable them to comply with their obligations under the listing rules, disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules. In particular, the FCA considers that listed companies should place particular emphasis on ensuring that they have adequate procedures, systems and controls in relation to, where applicable:

(1) identifying whether any obligations arise under [LR 10 (Significant transactions)] and LR 11 (Related party transactions); and

(2) the timely and accurate disclosure of information to the market.

7.2.3 [G] Timely and accurate disclosure of information to the market is a key obligation of listed companies. For the purposes of Listing Principle 1, a listed company should have adequate systems and controls to be able to:

(1) ensure that it can properly identify information which requires disclosure under the listing rules, disclosure requirements, transparency rules or corporate governance rules in a timely manner; and

(2) ensure that any information identified under (1) is properly considered by the directors and that such a consideration encompasses whether the information should be disclosed.

7.2.4 [G] In assessing whether the voting rights attaching to different classes of premium listed securities are proportionate for the purposes of Premium Listing Principle 4, the FCA will have regard to the following non-exhaustive list of factors:

(1) the extent to which the rights of the classes differ other than their voting rights, for example with regard to dividend rights or entitlement to any surplus capital on winding up;

(2) the extent of dispersion and relative liquidity of the classes; and/or

(3) the commercial rationale for the difference in the rights.
Chapter 8

Sponsors: Premium listing
8.1 Application

Sponsors and applicants

8.1.1 A sponsor must comply with:

1. LR 8.3 (Role of a sponsor: general);
2. LR 8.4 (Role of a sponsor: transactions);
3. LR 8.6 (Criteria for approval as a sponsor); and
4. LR 8.7 (Supervision of sponsors).

8.1.1A A person applying for approval as a sponsor must comply with LR 8.6 (Criteria for approval as a sponsor).

Listed companies and applicants

8.1.2 A company with, or applying for, a premium listing must comply with LR 8.2 (When a sponsor must be appointed or its guidance obtained) and LR 8.5 (Responsibilities of listed companies).
8.2 When a sponsor must be appointed or its guidance obtained

When a sponsor must be appointed

8.2.1 A company with, or applying for, a premium listing of its securities must appoint a sponsor on each occasion that it:

(1) is required to submit any of the following documents to the FCA in connection with an application for admission of securities to premium listing:
   (a) a prospectus or supplementary prospectus; or
   (b) a certificate of approval from another competent authority; or
   (c) a summary document as required by article 1(5)(j) of the Prospectus Regulation; or
   (d) listing particulars referred to in LR 15.3.3 R, LR 16.3.4 R, LR 21.3.3 R or LR 21.7.4 R or supplementary listing particulars; or

(1A) is required to publish a document under article 1(4)(f) or (g) or (5)(e) or (f) of the Prospectus Regulation; or

(2) is required to submit to the FCA a class 1 circular for approval; or

(3) is required to submit to the FCA a circular that proposes a reconstruction or a refinancing which is required by LR 9.5.12 R to include a working capital statement; or

(4) is required to submit to the FCA a circular for the proposed purchase of own shares: which is required by LR 13.7.1 R (2) to include a working capital statement; or

   [Note: This does not include a circular issued by a closed-ended investment company.]

(5) is required to do so by the FCA because it appears to the FCA that there is, or there may be, a breach of the listing rules, the disclosure requirements or the transparency rules by the listed company; or

(6) is required by LR 11.1.10 R (2)(b) to provide a listed company with a confirmation that the terms of the proposed related party transaction are fair and reasonable; or

(7) is required to submit to the FCA a related party circular which is required by LR 13.6.1 R (5) to include a statement by the board that the transaction or arrangement is fair and reasonable; or
8.2.1A  A company must appoint a sponsor where it applies to transfer its category of listing from:

1. a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
2. a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (investment company); or
3. a premium listing (investment company) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
4. a premium listing (commercial company) to a premium listing (investment company); or
   a standard listing (shares) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
   a standard listing (certificates representing certain securities) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
   a premium listing (commercial company) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company); or
   a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a premium listing (commercial company); or
   a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) to a premium listing (investment company); or
   a premium listing (investment company) to a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company).
Other transactions where a company with a premium listing must obtain a sponsor’s guidance

8.2.2 If a company with a premium listing is proposing to enter into a transaction which due to its size or nature could amount to a class 1 transaction or a reverse takeover it must obtain the guidance of a sponsor to assess the application of the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.

8.2.3 If a company with a premium listing is proposing to enter into a transaction which is, or may be, a related party transaction it must obtain the guidance of a sponsor in order to assess the application of the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.
8.3 Role of a sponsor: general

Responsibilities of a sponsor

8.3.1 A sponsor must in relation to a sponsor service:

(1) referred to in § LR 8.2.1R (1) to (4), § LR 8.2.1R (11), § LR 8.2.1AR and, where relevant § LR 8.2.1R (5), provide assurance to the FCA when required that the responsibilities of the company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities under the listing rules have been met;

(1A) provide to the FCA any explanation or confirmation in such form and within such time limit as the FCA reasonably requires for the purposes of ensuring that the listing rules are being complied with by a company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities; and

(2) guide the company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities in understanding and meeting its responsibilities under the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.

8.3.1A A sponsor must, for so long as it provides a sponsor service:

(1) take such reasonable steps as are sufficient to ensure that any communication or information it provides to the FCA in carrying out the sponsor service is, to the best of its knowledge and belief, accurate and complete in all material respects; and

(2) as soon as possible provide to the FCA any information of which it becomes aware that materially affects the accuracy or completeness of information it has previously provided.

8.3.1B Where a sponsor provides information to the FCA which is or is based on information it has received from a third party, in assessing whether a sponsor has complied with its obligations in § LR 8.3.1AR (1) the FCA will have regard, amongst other things, to whether a sponsor has appropriately used its own knowledge, judgment and expertise to review and challenge the information provided by the third party.

8.3.2 The sponsor will be the main point of contact with the FCA for any matter referred to in § LR 8.2. The FCA expects to discuss all issues relating to a transaction and any draft or final document directly with the sponsor. However, in appropriate circumstances, the FCA will communicate directly
with the company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities, or its advisers.

8.3.2A  A sponsor remains responsible for complying with LR 8.3 even where a sponsor relies on the company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities or a third party when providing an assurance or confirmation to the FCA.

Principles for sponsors: due care and skill

8.3.3  A sponsor must in relation to a sponsor service act with due care and skill.

Principles for sponsors: duty regarding directors of listed companies

8.3.4  Where, in relation to a sponsor service, a sponsor gives any guidance or advice to a listed company or applicant on the application or interpretation of the listing rules or disclosure requirements and transparency rules, the sponsor must take reasonable steps to satisfy itself that the director or directors of the listed company understand their responsibilities and obligations under the listing rules and disclosure requirements and transparency rules.

Principles for sponsors: relations with the FCA

8.3.5  A sponsor must at all times (whether in relation to a sponsor service or otherwise):

(1) deal with the FCA in an open and co-operative way; and

(2) deal with all enquiries raised by the FCA promptly.

(3) [deleted]

8.3.5A  If, in connection with the provision of a sponsor service, a sponsor becomes aware that it, or a company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities is failing or has failed to comply with its obligations under the listing rules, the disclosure requirements or the transparency rules, the sponsor must promptly notify the FCA.

8.3.5B  A sponsor must, in relation to a sponsor service, act with honesty and integrity.

8.3.6  (1) [deleted]

(2) [deleted]

(3) [deleted]
### 8.3.7 Principles for sponsors: identifying and managing conflicts

The purpose of **8.3.7** is to ensure that conflicts of interest do not adversely affect:

1. The ability of a sponsor to perform its functions properly under this chapter; or
2. Market confidence in sponsors.

### 8.3.7A

A sponsor must take all reasonable steps to identify conflicts of interest that could adversely affect its ability to perform its functions properly under this chapter.

### 8.3.8

In identifying conflicts of interest, sponsors should also take into account circumstances that could:

1. Create a perception in the market that a sponsor may not be able to perform its functions properly; or
2. Compromise the ability of a sponsor to fulfil its obligations to the FCA in relation to the provision of a sponsor service.

### 8.3.9

A sponsor must take all reasonable steps to put in place and maintain effective organisational and administrative arrangements that ensure conflicts of interest do not adversely affect its ability to perform its functions properly under this chapter.

### 8.3.10

Disclosure of a conflict of interest will not usually be considered to be an effective organisational or administrative arrangement for the purpose of **8.3.9**.

### 8.3.11

If, in relation to a sponsor service, a sponsor is not reasonably satisfied that its organisational and administrative arrangements will ensure that a conflict of interest will not adversely affect its ability to perform its functions properly under this chapter, it must decline or cease to provide the sponsor services.

### 8.3.12

**8.3.11** recognises that there will be some conflicts of interest that cannot be effectively managed. Providing sponsor services in those cases could adversely affect both a sponsor’s ability to perform its functions and market confidence in the sponsor regime. If in doubt about whether a conflict can be effectively managed a sponsor should discuss the issue with the FCA before it decides if it can provide a sponsor service.
8.3.12A If LR 8.3.7B R, LR 8.3.9 R and LR 8.3.11 R apply for so long as the sponsor provides a sponsor service.

8.3.13 [deleted]

8.3.14 If a listed company or applicant appoints more than one sponsor to provide a sponsor service then:

1. the appointment does not relieve either of the appointed sponsors of their obligations under LR 8; and
2. the sponsors are each responsible for complying with the obligations under LR 8.

8.3.15 If a listed company or applicant appoints more than one sponsor to provide a sponsor service, the FCA expects the sponsors to co-operate with each other in relation to the sponsor service, including by establishing arrangements for the sharing of information as appropriate having regard to the sponsor service.
8.4 Role of a sponsor: transactions

Application for admission

8.4.1 R

LR 8.4.2 R to LR 8.4.4 G apply in relation to an application for admission of securities to premium listing if an applicant does not have securities already admitted to premium listing, the conditions in LR 6.1.1R(1), LR 6.1.1R(2), LR 21.2.5R(1), LR 21.2.5R(2), LR 21.6.13R(1) or LR 21.6.13R(2) do not apply and, in connection with the application, the applicant is required to publish a document under article 1(4)(f) or (g) or (5)(e) or (f) of the Prospectus Regulation or is required to submit to the FCA:

1. a prospectus or supplementary prospectus; or

2. a certificate of approval from another competent authority; or

3. a summary document under article 1(5)(j) of the Prospectus Regulation; or

4. listing particulars or supplementary listing particulars under LR 15.3.3 R or LR 16.3.4 R.

8.4.2 R

A sponsor must not submit to the FCA an application on behalf of an applicant, in accordance with LR 3, unless it has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that:

1. the applicant has satisfied all requirements of the listing rules relevant to an application for admission to listing;

2. the applicant has satisfied all applicable requirements set out in the prospectus rules unless the home Member State of the applicant is not, or will not be, the United Kingdom;

3. the directors of the applicant have established procedures which enable the applicant to comply with the listing rules and the disclosure requirements and transparency rules on an ongoing basis;

4. the directors of the applicant have established procedures which provide a reasonable basis for them to make proper judgments on an ongoing basis as to the financial position and prospects of the applicant and its group; and

5. the directors of the applicant have a reasonable basis on which to make the working capital statement which demonstrates that LR 6.7.1R is satisfied.
**New applicants: procedure**

**8.4.3**

A sponsor must:

1. submit a completed Sponsor’s Declaration on an Application for Listing to the FCA either:
   - on the day the FCA is to consider the application for approval of the prospectus and prior to the time the prospectus is approved; or
   - at a time agreed with the FCA, if the FCA is not approving the prospectus;
2. submit a completed Shareholder Statement or Pricing Statement, as applicable, to the FCA by 9 a.m. on the day the FCA is to consider the application;
3. ensure that all matters known to it which, in its reasonable opinion, should be taken into account by the FCA in considering:
   - the application for listing; and
   - whether the admission of the securities would be detrimental to investors’ interests;
   - have been disclosed with sufficient prominence in the prospectus or a document published under article 1(4)(f) or (g) or (5)(e) or (f) of the Prospectus Regulation or otherwise in writing to the FCA; and
4. submit a letter to the FCA setting out how the applicant satisfies the criteria in LR 2 (Requirements for listing - all securities), LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)) and, if applicable, LR 15, LR 16 or LR 21, no later than when the first draft of the prospectus or listing particulars is submitted (or, if the FCA is not approving a prospectus, at a time to be agreed with the FCA).

**Note:** the Sponsor’s Declaration on an Application for Listing, the Shareholder Statement and the Pricing Statement forms can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA’s website.

**8.4.4**

Depending on the circumstances of the case, a sponsor providing services to an applicant on an application for admission to listing may have to confirm in writing to the FCA that the board of the applicant has allotted the securities.

**Note:** see LR 3.3.4 R

**8.4.5**

(1) [deleted]

(2) [deleted]

(3) [deleted]

**8.4.6**

(1) [deleted]

(a) [deleted]
Application for admission: further issues

A sponsor must not submit to the FCA an application on behalf of an applicant, in accordance with LR 3 (Listing applications), unless it has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that:

1. the applicant has satisfied all requirements of the listing rules relevant to an application for admission to listing;
2. the applicant has satisfied all applicable requirements set out in the prospectus rules unless the home Member State of the applicant is not, or will not be, the United Kingdom; and
3. the directors of the applicant have a reasonable basis on which to make the working capital statement:
   a. that is, in the case of equity shares, required to be included in the applicant’s prospectus or listing particulars and submitted to the FCA in accordance with LR 3.3.2R(2); or
   b. that is, in the case of certificates representing shares,
      i. included in the applicant’s prospectus or listing particulars for the certificates representing shares that are being admitted, or
      ii. required to be published by the applicant in accordance with LR 21.8.27R(2).

Further issues: procedure

A sponsor must:

1. submit a completed Sponsor’s Declaration on an Application for Listing to the FCA either:
   a. on the day the FCA is to consider the application for approval of the prospectus and prior to the time the prospectus is approved; or
   b. at a time agreed with the FCA if the FCA is not approving the prospectus or if it is determining whether a document is an equivalent document;
2. submit a completed Shareholder Statement or Pricing Statement, as applicable, to the FCA by 9 a.m. on the day the FCA is to consider the application; and
3. ensure that all matters known to it which, in its reasonable opinion, should be taken into account by the FCA in considering the
application for listing have been disclosed with sufficient prominence in the prospectus or a document published under article 1(4)(f) or (g) or (5)(e) or (f) of the Prospectus Regulation or otherwise in writing to the FCA.

[Note: The Sponsor's Declaration on an Application for Listing, the Shareholder Statement and the Pricing Statement forms can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA's website.]

8.4.10 Depending on the circumstances of the case, a sponsor providing services to an applicant on an application for admission to listing may have to confirm in writing to the FCA the number of securities to be allotted or admitted. [Note: see LR 3.3.4 R]

Class 1 circulars, refinancing and purchase of own equity shares

8.4.11 LR 8.4.12 R to LR 8.4.13 R apply in relation to transactions involving an issuer with a premium listing that is required to submit to the FCA for approval:

(1) a class 1 circular; or

(2) a circular that proposes a reconstruction or a re-financing which does not constitute a class 1 transaction; or

(3) a circular for the proposed purchase of own shares:
   (a) which does not constitute a class 1 circular; and
   (b) is required by LR 13.7.1R (2) to include a working capital statement.

8.4.12 A sponsor must not submit to the FCA, on behalf of a listed company, a circular regarding a transaction set out in LR 8.4.11 R for approval, unless the sponsor has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that:

(1) the listed company has satisfied all requirements of the listing rules relevant to the production of a class 1 circular or other circular;

(2) the transaction will not have an adverse impact on the listed company's ability to comply with the listing rules or the disclosure requirements and transparency rules; and

(3) the directors of the listed company have a reasonable basis on which to make the working capital statement required by LR 9.5.12 R, LR 13.4.1 R or LR 13.7.1 R.

Circulars: procedure

8.4.13 A sponsor acting on a transaction falling within LR 8.4.11 R must:

(1) submit a completed Sponsor's Declaration for the Production of a Circular to the FCA on the day the circular is to be approved by the FCA and prior to the time the circular is approved;
(2) submit a completed Pricing Statement, if applicable, to the FCA by 9 a.m on the day the FCA is to consider the application; and

(3) ensure that all matters known to it which, in its reasonable opinion, should be taken into account by the FCA in considering the transaction have been disclosed with sufficient prominence in the documentation or otherwise in writing to the FCA.

[Note: The Sponsor’s Declaration for the Production of a Circular and the Pricing Statement forms can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA’s website.]

Applying for transfer between listing categories

8.4.14 In relation to a proposed transfer under LR 5.4A, if a sponsor is appointed in accordance with LR 8.2.1A R, it must:

(1) submit a letter to the FCA setting out how the issuer satisfies each listing rule requirement relevant to the category of listing to which it wishes to transfer, by no later than when the first draft of the circular or announcement required under LR 5.4A is submitted;

(2) submit a completed Sponsor’s Declaration for a Transfer of Listing to the FCA for the proposed transfer on the day the circular or announcement is to be approved by the FCA and before it is approved; and

(3) ensure that all matters known to it which, in its reasonable opinion, should be taken into account by the FCA in considering the transfer between listing categories have been disclosed with sufficient prominence in the circular or announcement referred to in LR 5.4A or otherwise in writing to the FCA.

[Note: The Sponsor’s Declaration for a Transfer of Listing can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.]

8.4.15 A sponsor must not submit to the FCA on behalf of an issuer a final circular or announcement for approval or a Sponsor’s Declaration for a Transfer of Listing, unless it has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that:

(1) the issuer satisfies all eligibility requirements of the listing rules that are relevant to the new category to which it is seeking to transfer;

(2) the issuer has satisfied all requirements relevant to the production of the circular required under LR 5.4A.4 R or the announcement required under LR 5.4A.5 R (whichever is relevant);

(3) the directors of the issuer have established procedures which enable the issuer to comply with the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules on an ongoing basis;

(4) the directors of the issuer have established procedures which provide a reasonable basis for them to make proper judgments on an ongoing basis as to the financial position and prospects of the issuer and its group; and
Section 8.4 : Role of a sponsor: transactions

(5) the directors of the issuer have a reasonable basis on which to make the working capital statement (if any) required in connection with the transfer.

8.4.16 R

LR 8.4.15R (3), LR 8.4.15R (4) and LR 8.4.15R (5) do not apply in relation to an issuer that was required to meet these requirements under its existing listing category.

Reverse takeovers

A sponsor acting on a reverse takeover where the issuer decides to make a disclosure announcement under LR 5.6.15 G must:

(1) submit to the FCA under LR 5.6.17 R a completed Sponsor’s Declaration for a Reverse Takeover Announcement;

(2) not submit to the FCA the Sponsor’s Declaration for a Reverse Takeover Announcement unless it has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that it is reasonable for the issuer to provide the declarations described in LR 5.6.15 G (3) and LR 5.6.15 G (4); and

(3) ensure that all matters known to it which, in its reasonable opinion, should be taken into account by the FCA in considering a proposed disclosure announcement under LR 5.6.15 G have been disclosed with sufficient prominence in the announcement or otherwise in writing to the FCA.

[Note: The Sponsor’s Declaration for a Reverse Takeover Announcement can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA website.]
8.5 Responsibilities of listed companies

Notifications to FCA

8.5.1 A listed company or applicant must ensure that the FCA is informed promptly of the name and contact details of any sponsor appointed in accordance with the listing rules (either by the listed company or applicant or by the sponsor itself).

8.5.2 (1) A listed company or applicant must notify the FCA in writing immediately of the resignation or dismissal of any sponsor that it had appointed.

(2) In the case of a dismissal, the reasons for the dismissal must be included in the notification.

(3) The notification must be copied to the sponsor.

Listed company appoints more than one sponsor

8.5.3 Where a listed company or applicant appoints more than one sponsor to provide a sponsor service, the company must:

(1) ensure that one sponsor takes responsibility for contact with the FCA in respect of administrative arrangements for the sponsor service; and

(2) inform the FCA promptly, in writing, of the name and contact details of the sponsor taking responsibility under (1).

8.5.4 [deleted]

8.5.5 [deleted]

Cooperation with sponsors

8.5.6 In relation to the provision of a sponsor service, a company with or applying for a premium listing of its securities must cooperate with its sponsor by providing the sponsor with all information reasonably requested by the sponsor for the purpose of carrying out the sponsor service in accordance with LR 8.
8.6 Criteria for approval as a sponsor

List of sponsors

8.6.1 The FCA will maintain a list of sponsors on its website.

Application for approval as a sponsor

8.6.2 A person wanting to provide sponsor services, and to be included on the list of sponsors, must apply to the FCA for approval as a sponsor by submitting the following to the Sponsor Supervision Team at the FCA’s address:

1. a completed Sponsor Firm Application Form; and
2. [deleted]
3. the application fee set out in FEES 3.

[Note: The Sponsor’s Firm Application Form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA’s website.]

8.6.3 A person wanting to provide sponsor services and be included on the list of sponsors must also submit:

1. all additional documents, explanations and information as required by the FCA; and
2. verification of any information in such a manner as the FCA may specify.

8.6.4 When considering an application for approval as a sponsor the FCA may:

1. carry out any enquiries and request any further information which it considers appropriate, including consulting other regulators;
2. request that the applicant or its specified representative answer questions and explain any matter the FCA considers relevant to the application; and
3. take into account any information which it considers appropriate in relation to the application.
4. [deleted]
[Note: The decision-making procedures that the FCA will follow when it considers whether to refuse an application for approval as a sponsor are set out in DEPP.]

Criteria for approval as a sponsor

The FCA will approve a person as a sponsor only if it is satisfied that the person:

1. is an authorised person or a member of a designated professional body;
2. is competent to provide sponsor services in accordance with LR 8; and
3. has appropriate systems and controls in place to carry out its role as a sponsor in accordance with LR 8.

The FCA may impose restrictions or limitations on the services a sponsor can provide at the time of granting a sponsor’s approval.

Situations when the FCA may impose restrictions or limitations on the services a sponsor can provide include (but are not limited to) where it appears to the FCA that:

1. the employees of the person applying to be a sponsor whom it is proposed will perform sponsor services have no or limited relevant experience and expertise of providing certain types of sponsor services or of providing sponsor services to certain types of company; or
2. the person applying to be a sponsor does not have systems and controls in place which are appropriate for the nature of the sponsor services which the person applying to be a sponsor proposes to undertake.

[Note: A statutory notice may be required under section 88 of the Act. Where this is the case, the procedure for giving a statutory notice is set out in DEPP.]

Where a person wishes to apply for approval as a sponsor to provide a limited range of sponsor services, it may do so on the basis that the FCA will impose a limitation or restriction on its approval (in accordance with section 88 of the Act). In such circumstances, the FCA will assess whether the person satisfies LR 8.6.5R (2) and LR 8.6.5R (3) taking into consideration the sponsor services to which the approval, as formally limited or restricted by the FCA, will relate.

Continuing obligations

A sponsor must comply, at all times, with the criteria set out in LR 8.6.5R.
### Competence of a sponsor

**8.6.7** A sponsor, or a person applying for approval as a sponsor, will not satisfy LR 8.6.5R (2) unless it has:

1. submitted a *sponsor declaration* to the FCA:
   - for a *person* applying for approval as a sponsor, within three years of the date of its application; and
   - for a *sponsor*, within the previous three years; and
2. a sufficient number of *employees* with the skills, knowledge and expertise necessary for it to:
   - provide *sponsor services* in accordance with LR 8.3;
   - understand:
     - the *rules*, *guidance* and ESMA publications directly relevant to *sponsor services*;
     - the procedural requirements and processes of the FCA;
     - the due diligence process required in order to provide *sponsor services* in accordance with LR 8.3 and LR 8.4;
     - the responsibilities and obligations of a *sponsor* in LR 8; and
     - specialist industry sectors, if relevant to the *sponsor services* it provides or intends to provide; and
   - be able to comply with the key contact requirements in LR 8.6.19 R.

**8.6.7A** To determine whether a *sponsor* or a *person* applying for approval as a *sponsor* is able to satisfy LR 8.6.7R (1)(a), the FCA may consider whether any of the person’s employees have had material involvement in the provision of *sponsor services* that have required the submission of a *sponsor declaration* within the previous three years.

**8.6.7B** In exceptional circumstances, the FCA may consider dispensing with, or modifying, the requirement in LR 8.6.7R (1) in accordance with LR 1.2.1 R.

**8.6.7C** In assessing whether a *sponsor* or a *person* applying for approval as a *sponsor* satisfies LR 8.6.7R (2), the FCA will consider a variety of factors including:

1. the nature, scale and complexity of its business;
2. the diversity of its operations;
3. the volume and size of transactions it undertakes;
4. the volume and size of transactions it anticipates undertaking in the following year; and
5. the degree of risk associated with the transactions it undertakes or anticipates undertaking in the following year.
8.6.7D  
Notwithstanding □ LR 8.6.7C G, when considering whether a sponsor satisfies □ LR 8.6.7R (2)(c) the FCA expects a sponsor to have no less than two employees who are able to satisfy the key contact requirements in □ LR 8.6.19R (2).

8.6.8  
(1) [deleted]
(2) [deleted]
(3) [deleted]

8.6.9  
(1) [deleted]
(2) [deleted]
   (a) [deleted]
   (b) [deleted]
(3) [deleted]

8.6.9A  
[deleted]

8.6.9B  
In assessing whether a sponsor or a person applying for approval as a sponsor can demonstrate it is competent in the areas required under □ LR 8.6.7R (2), the FCA may also take into account, where relevant, the guidance or advice on the listing rules or disclosure requirements and transparency rules the sponsor or person has given in circumstances other than in providing sponsor services.

8.6.10  
[deleted]

8.6.11  
[deleted]

Systems and controls: general

8.6.12  
A sponsor or a person applying for approval as a sponsor will not satisfy □ LR 8.6.5R (3) unless it has in place:

   (1) clear and effective reporting lines for the provision of sponsor services (including clear and effective management responsibilities);

   (1A) effective systems and controls which require employees with management responsibilities for the provision of sponsor services to understand and apply the requirements of □ LR 8;  

   (2) effective systems and controls for the appropriate supervision of employees engaged in the provision of sponsor services by the sponsor;

   (3) effective systems and controls for compliance with all applicable listing rules at all times, including when performing sponsor services;
(4) [deleted]

(5) [deleted]

(6) effective systems and controls which require appropriate staffing arrangements for providing each sponsor service in line with the principles for sponsors in LR 8.3;

(7) effective systems and controls for employees engaged in the provision of sponsor services to receive appropriate guidance and training to provide each sponsor service in line with the principles for sponsors in LR 8.3;

(8) effective systems and controls to identify and manage conflicts of interest;

(9) effective systems and controls for compliance with each of the requirements in LR 8.6.7R (2)(b); and

(10) systems and controls which comply with the requirements of LR 8.6.16A R (Record management).

8.6.13 When considering a sponsor’s ability to comply with LR 8.6.12 R, the FCA will consider a variety of factors, including:

(1) the nature, scale and complexity of its business;

(2) the diversity of its operations;

(3) the volume and size of the transactions it undertakes;

(4) the volume and size of the transactions it anticipates undertaking in the following year; and

(5) the degree of risk associated with the transactions it undertakes or anticipates undertaking in the following year.

**Systems and controls: conflicts of interest**

8.6.13A A sponsor will generally be regarded as having appropriate systems and controls for identifying and managing conflicts if it has in place effective policies and procedures:

(1) to ensure that decisions taken on managing conflicts of interest are taken by appropriately senior staff and on a timely basis;

(2) to monitor whether arrangements put in place to manage conflicts are effective; and

(3) to ensure that individuals within the sponsor are appropriately trained to enable them to identify, escalate and manage conflicts of interest.

(4) [deleted]
The policies and procedures referred to in LR 8.6.13A G are distinct from the actual organisational and administrative arrangements that a sponsor is required to put in place and maintain under LR 8.3.9 R to manage specific conflicts.

A sponsor must have effective arrangements to create and retain for six years accessible records which are sufficient to be capable of demonstrating that it has provided sponsor services and otherwise complied with its obligations under LR 8 including:

(1) where a declaration is to be submitted to the FCA:
   (a) under LR 8.4.3 R (1), LR 8.4.9 R (1), LR 8.4.13 R (1), LR 8.4.14 R (2) or LR 8.4.17 R; or
   (b) pursuant to an appointment under LR 8.2.1 R (5);
      the basis of each declaration given;

(2) where any opinion, assurance or confirmation is provided by a sponsor to the FCA or a company with or applying for a premium listing in relation to a sponsor service, the basis of that opinion, assurance or confirmation;

(3) where a sponsor provides guidance to a company with or applying for a premium listing pursuant to LR 8.2.2 R, LR 8.2.3 R or LR 8.3.1 R (2), the basis upon which the guidance is given and upon which any judgments or opinions underlying the guidance have been made or given; and

(4) the steps taken to comply with its obligations under LR 8.3.7 B R, LR 8.3.9 R, LR 8.3.11 R and LR 8.6.6 R.
Records should:

1. be capable of timely retrieval; and
2. include material communications which relate to the provision of sponsor services, including any advice or guidance given to a company with or applying for a premium listing in relation to their responsibilities under the listing rules, the disclosure requirements and the transparency rules.

In considering whether a sponsor has satisfied the requirements regarding sufficiency of records in LR 8.6.16A, the FCA will consider whether the records would enable a person with general knowledge of the sponsor regime but no specific knowledge of the actual sponsor service undertaken to understand and verify the basis upon which material judgments have been made throughout the provision of the sponsor service.

For each sponsor service requiring the submission of a document to the FCA or contact with the FCA, a sponsor must:

1. at the time of submission or on first making contact with the FCA notify the FCA of the name and contact details of a key contact within the sponsor for that matter; and
2. ensure that its key contact:
   a. has sufficient knowledge about the listed company or applicant and the proposed matter to be able to answer queries from the FCA about it;
   b. is available to answer queries from the FCA on any business day between 7am and 6pm;
   c. is authorised to make representations to the FCA for and on behalf of the sponsor;
   d. possesses technical knowledge of rules, guidance and ESMA publications directly relevant to the sponsor service; and
   e. understands the responsibilities and obligations of the sponsor under LR 8 in relation to the sponsor service.

The FCA expects an employee carrying out the role of key contact to have provided a sponsor service in the previous three years.
8.7 Supervision of sponsors

The FCA expects to have an open, co-operative and constructive relationship with a sponsor to enable it to have a broad picture of the sponsor’s activities and its ability to satisfy the criteria for approval as a sponsor as set out in LR 8.6.5 R.

Requirement to provide information

(1) The FCA may by notice in writing given to a sponsor require it to provide specified documents or specified information to the FCA.

(2) The sponsor must as soon as practicable provide to the FCA any documents or information that it has been required to provide under (1).

(3) This rule applies only to documents or information reasonably required by the FCA in connection with the performance of its functions in relation to a sponsor or a company that has appointed a sponsor.

Supervisory tools

The FCA uses a variety of tools to monitor whether a sponsor:

(1) continues to satisfy the criteria for approval as a sponsor as set out in LR 8.6.5 R; and

(2) remains in compliance with all applicable listing rules.

The FCA may impose restrictions or limitations on the services a sponsor can provide at any time following the grant of a sponsor’s approval.

Situations when the FCA may impose restrictions or limitations on the services a sponsor can provide include (but are not limited to) where it appears to the FCA that:

(1) the sponsor has no or limited relevant experience and expertise of providing certain types of sponsor services or of providing sponsor services to certain types of company; or

(2) the sponsor does not have systems and controls in place which are appropriate for the nature of the sponsor services which the sponsor is undertaking or proposing to undertake.
8.7.3  G  FCA staff, after notifying the sponsor, may make supervisory visits to a sponsor on a periodic and an ad hoc basis.

8.7.4  G  The FCA will give reasonable notice to a sponsor of requests for meetings or requests for access to a sponsor’s documents and records.

**Requests from other regulators**

8.7.5  G  The FCA, on behalf of other regulators, may request information from a sponsor or pass information on to other regulators to enable such regulators to discharge their functions.

**Fees**

8.7.6  R  A sponsor must pay the annual fee set out in SEES 4 in order to remain on the list of sponsors.

**Annual notifications**

8.7.7  R  A sponsor must provide to the FCA on or after the first business day of January in each year but no later than the last business day of January in each year:

1. written confirmation that it continues to satisfy the criteria for approval as a sponsor as set out in LR 8.6.5 R; and

1A  for each of the criteria in that rule, evidence of the basis upon which it considers that it meets that criterion.

2. [deleted]

3. [deleted]

4. [deleted]

8.7.7A  R  Written confirmation must be provided by submitting a completed Sponsor Annual Notification Form to the FCA at the FCA’s address.

[Note: The Sponsor Annual Notification Form can be found on the UKLA section of the FCA’s website.]

**General notifications**

8.7.8  R  A sponsor must notify the FCA in writing as soon as possible if:

1. (a) the sponsor ceases to satisfy the criteria for approval as a sponsor set out in LR 8.6.5 R or becomes aware of any matter which, in its reasonable opinion, would be relevant to the FCA in
considering whether the sponsor continues to comply with 
■ LR 8.6.6 R; or

(b) the sponsor becomes aware of any fact or circumstance relating 
to the sponsor or any of its employees engaged in the provision 
of sponsor services by the sponsor which, in its reasonable 
opinion, would be likely to adversely affect market confidence in 
sponsors; or

(2) the sponsor, or any of its employees engaged in the provision of 
sponsor services by the sponsor, are:

(a) convicted of any offence involving fraud, theft or other 
dishonesty; or

(b) the subject of a bankruptcy proceeding, a receiving order or an 
administration order; or

(3) any of its employees engaged in the provision of sponsor services 
by the sponsor are disqualified by a court from acting as a director of a 
company or from acting in a management capacity or conducting the 
affairs of any company; or

(4) the sponsor, or any of its employees engaged in the provision of 
sponsor services by the sponsor, are subject to any public criticism, 
regulatory intervention or disciplinary action:

(a) by the FCA; or

(b) by any designated professional body; or

(c) by any body that is comparable to the FCA or a designated 
professional body; or

(d) under any comparable legislation in any jurisdiction outside the 
United Kingdom; or

(5) the sponsor resigns or is dismissed by a listed company or applicant,
giving details of any relevant facts or circumstances;

(6) the sponsor changes its name; or

(7) [deleted]

(8) a listed company or applicant denies the sponsor access to documents 
or information that have been the subject of a reasonable request by 
the sponsor; or

(9) it identifies or otherwise becomes aware of any material deficiency in 
the sponsor’s systems and controls; or

(10) there is intended to be a change of control of the sponsor, any 
restructuring of the sponsor’s group, or a re-organisation of or a 
substantial change to the directors, partners or employees engaged in 
the provision of sponsor services by the sponsor, or

(11) there is expected to be a change in the financial position of the 
sponsor or any of its group companies that would be likely to 
adversely affect the sponsor’s ability to perform sponsor services or 
otherwise comply with ■ LR 8.
Where a sponsor is of the opinion that notwithstanding the circumstances giving rise to a notification obligation under LR 8.7.8 R, it continues to satisfy the ongoing criteria for approval as a sponsor in accordance with LR 8.6.6 R, it must include in its notification to the FCA a statement to that effect and the basis for its opinion.

General notifications may be made in the first instance by telephone, but must be confirmed promptly in writing.

Written notifications should be sent to the Sponsor Supervision Team at the FCA’s address.

A sponsor must not delegate any of its functions as such, or permit another person to perform those functions,

(1) [deleted]

(2) [deleted]

A sponsor that intends to request the FCA to cancel its approval as a sponsor should comply with LR 8.7.22 R.
8.7.21A  Examples of when a sponsor should submit a cancellation request pursuant to LR 8.7.22 R include, but are not limited to:

1. situations where the sponsor ceases to satisfy the ongoing criteria for approval as a sponsor in accordance with LR 8.6.6 R and, following a notification made under LR 8.7.8 R, there are no ongoing discussions with the FCA which could lead to the conclusion that the sponsor remains eligible; or

2. where there is a change of control of the sponsor or any restructuring of the sponsor’s group that will result in sponsor services being provided by a different person, in which case the person that is intended to provide the sponsor services should apply for approval as a sponsor under LR 8.6 before it provides any sponsor services.

8.7.22  A request by a sponsor for its approval as a sponsor to be cancelled must be in writing and must include:

1. the sponsor’s name;

2. a clear explanation of the background and reasons for the request;

3. the date on which the sponsor requests the cancellation to take effect;

4. a signed confirmation that the sponsor will not provide any sponsor services as of the date the request is submitted to the FCA; and

5. the name and contact details of the person at the sponsor with whom the FCA should liaise with in relation to the request.

8.7.23  A sponsor may withdraw its request at any time before the cancellation takes effect. The withdrawal request should initially be made by telephone and then confirmed in writing as soon as possible, with an explanation of the reasons for the withdrawal.

8.7.24  (1) [deleted]

(2) [deleted]

Suspension of a sponsor’s approval at the sponsor’s request

8.7.25  A request by a sponsor for its approval as a sponsor to be suspended must be in writing and must include:

1. the sponsor’s name;

2. a clear explanation of the background and reasons for the request;

3. the date on which the sponsor requests the suspension to take effect;

4. a signed confirmation that the sponsor will not provide any sponsor services as of the date the request is submitted to the FCA; and
(5) the name and contact details of the person at the sponsor with whom the FCA should liaise with in relation to the request.

8.7.26 A sponsor may withdraw its request at any time before the suspension takes effect. The withdrawal request should initially be made by telephone and then confirmed in writing as soon as possible, with an explanation of the reasons for the withdrawal.

8.7.26A A sponsor may wish to consider submitting a suspension request under LR 8.7.25 R where the sponsor:

(1) ceases to satisfy the ongoing criteria for approval as a sponsor in accordance with LR 8.6.6 R;

(2) has notified the FCA in accordance with LR 8.7.8 R;

(3) is having ongoing discussions with the FCA regarding remedial action; and

(4) is undertaking remedial action which may result in the sponsor being able to satisfy the ongoing criteria for approval in accordance with LR 8.6.6 R.

Sponsors: advancing the FCA’s operational objectives

8.7.27 The FCA may impose restrictions or limitations on the services a sponsor can provide or suspend a sponsor’s approval under section 88E of the Act if the FCA considers it desirable to do so in order to advance one or more of its operational objectives.

[Note: A statutory notice may be required under section 88F of the Act. Where this is the case, the procedure for giving a statutory notice is set out in DEPP.]
Chapter 9

Continuing obligations
This chapter applies to a company that has a premium listing.
9.2 Requirements with continuing application

Admission to trading

9.2.1 R A listed company must comply with LR 2.2.3 R at all times.

9.2.2 R A listed company must inform the FCA in writing as soon as possible if it has:

(1) requested a RIE to admit or re-admit any of its listed equity shares to trading; or

(2) requested a RIE to cancel or suspend trading of any of its listed equity shares; or

(3) been informed by a RIE that trading of any of its listed equity shares will be cancelled or suspended.

Independent business

9.2.2A R (1) A listed company must carry on an independent business as its main activity at all times.

(2) [deleted]

9.2.2AA G LR 6.4.3G provides guidance on factors that may indicate that a listed company is not carrying on an independent business.

Controlling shareholders

9.2.2AB R A listed company with a controlling shareholder must demonstrate that, despite having a controlling shareholder, the listed company is still able to carry on an independent business as its main activity at all times.

9.2.2AC G LR 6.5.3G provides guidance on factors that may indicate that a listed company with a controlling shareholder is not carrying on an independent business.

9.2.2AD R Where a listed company has a controlling shareholder, it must have in place at all times:
(1) a written and legally binding agreement which is intended to ensure that the controlling shareholder complies with the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R; and

(2) a constitution that allows the election and re-election of independent directors to be conducted in accordance with ■ LR 9.2.2ER and ■ LR 9.2.2FR (election provisions).

9.2.2B In order to comply with ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1), where a listed company will have more than one controlling shareholder, the listed company will not be required to enter into a separate agreement with each controlling shareholder if:

(1) the listed company reasonably considers, in light of its understanding of the relationship between the relevant controlling shareholders, that a controlling shareholder can procure the compliance of another controlling shareholder and that controlling shareholder's associates with the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R; and

(2) the agreement, which contains the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R, entered into with the relevant controlling shareholder also contains:

   (a) a provision in which the controlling shareholder agrees to procure the compliance of a non-signing controlling shareholder and its associates with the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R; and

   (b) the names of any such non-signing controlling shareholder.

9.2.2C Where as a result of changes in ownership or control of a listed company, a person becomes a controlling shareholder of the listed company, the listed company will be allowed:

(1) a period of not more than 6 months from the event that resulted in that person becoming a controlling shareholder to comply with ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1); and

(2) in the case of a listed company which did not previously have a controlling shareholder, until the date of the next annual general meeting of the listed company, other than an annual general meeting for which notice:

   (a) has already been given; or

   (b) is given within a period of 3 months from the event that resulted in that person becoming a controlling shareholder;

          to comply with ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(2).

9.2.2D In complying with ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(2), a listed company may allow an existing independent director who is being proposed for re-election (including any such director who was appointed by the board of the listed company until the next annual general meeting) to remain in office until any resolution required by ■ LR 9.2.2FR has been voted on.

9.2.2E Where ■ LR 9.2.2ADR applies, the election or re-election of any independent director by shareholders must be approved by:
(1) the shareholders of the listed company; and
(2) the independent shareholders of the listed company.

Where LR 9.2.2ER applies, if the election or re-election of an independent director is not approved by both the shareholders and the independent shareholders of the listed company, but the listed company wishes to propose that person for election or re-election as an independent director, the listed company must propose a further resolution to elect or re-elect the proposed independent director which:

(1) must not be voted on within a period of 90 days from the date of the original vote;
(2) must be voted on within a period of 30 days from the end of the period set out in (1); and
(3) must be approved by the shareholders of the listed company.

A listed company must comply with the undertakings in LR 6.5.4R or LR 9.2.2ADR(1) at all times.

In addition to the annual confirmation required to be included in a listed company's annual financial report under LR 9.8.4R(14), the FCA may request information from a listed company under LR 1.3.1R(3) to confirm or verify that an undertaking in LR 6.5.4R or LR 9.2.2ADR(1) or a procurement obligation (as set out in LR 6.5.5R(2)(a) or LR 9.2.2BR(2)(a)) contained in an agreement entered into under LR 6.5.4R or LR 9.2.2ADR(1) is being or has been complied with.

Control of business

A listed company must exercise operational control over the business it carries on as its main activity at all times.

LR 6.6.3G provides guidance on factors that may indicate that a listed company is not exercising operational control over the business it carries on as its main activity.

(1) This rule applies where a mineral company does not hold controlling interests in a majority (by value) of the properties, fields, mines or other assets in which it has invested.

(2) The mineral company is not required to comply with LR 9.2.2IR where it can demonstrate the factors set out in LR 6.10.3R(2).

[deleted]

[deleted]
Compliance with the disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules

9.2.5 G A listed company, whose equity shares are admitted to trading on a regulated market in the United Kingdom, should consider the obligations under the disclosure requirements.

9.2.6 R A listed company that is not already required to comply with the obligations referred to under article 17 of the Market Abuse Regulation must comply with those obligations as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the disclosure requirements and transparency rules subject to article 22 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

9.2.6A G A listed company, whose equity shares are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under ■ DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), ■ DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules), ■ DTR 6 (Access to information) and ■ DTR 7 (Corporate governance).

9.2.6B R A listed company that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules (or with corresponding requirements imposed by another EEA Member State) must comply with ■ DTR 4, ■ DTR 5 and ■ DTR 6 as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the transparency rules.

9.2.6C R A listed company that is not already required to comply with:

(1) ■ DTR 7.3 (Related party transactions); or

(2) requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to ■ DTR 7.3;

must comply with ■ DTR 7.3 as if it were an issuer to which ■ DTR 7.3 applies, subject to the modifications set out in ■ LR 9.2.6DR.

9.2.6D R For the purposes of ■ LR 9.2.6CR, ■ DTR 7.3 is modified as follows:

(1) ■ DTR 7.3.2R must be read as if the words “has the meaning in IFRS” are replaced by:

“has the meaning:
(a) in IFRS; or
(b) where the listed company prepares annual consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting standards which have been determined to be equivalent to IFRS by the European Commission in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No. 1569/2007 of 21 December 2007 establishing a mechanism for the determination of equivalence of accounting standards applied by third country issuers of securities pursuant to Directives 2003/71/EC and 2004/109/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council,

(i) in IFRS, or
(ii) in the equivalent accounting standards in accordance with which its annual consolidated financial statements are prepared;

at the choice of the listed company.”

(2) ■ DTR 7.3.8R(2) and ■ (3) do not apply;

(3) ■ DTR 7.3.9R must be read as follows:

(a) as if the words “after obtaining board approval” are replaced by “after publishing an announcement in accordance with ■ DTR 7.3.8R(1)”; and

(b) the reference to ■ DTR 7.3.8R must be read as a reference to ■ DTR 7.3.8R as modified by ■ LR 9.2.6DR(2); and

(4) in ■ DTR 7.3.13R the references to ■ DTR 7.3.8R must be read as references to ■ DTR 7.3.8R as modified by ■ LR 9.2.6DR(2).

9.2.7  R

(1) (2) [deleted]

9.2.8  R [deleted]

9.2.8A  G [deleted]

9.2.9  G [deleted]

9.2.10  R [deleted]

Contact details

9.2.11  R

A listed company must ensure that the FCA is provided with up to date contact details of at least one appropriate person nominated by it to act as the first point of contact with the FCA in relation to the company’s compliance with the listing rules and the disclosure requirements and transparency rules.

9.2.12  G

The contact person referred to in ■ LR 9.2.11 R will be expected to be:

(1) knowledgeable about the listed company and the listing rules applicable to it;

(2) capable of ensuring that appropriate action is taken on a timely basis; and

(3) contactable on business days between the hours of 7 a.m. to 7 p.m.

Sponsors

9.2.13  G

A listed company should consider its notification obligations under ■ LR 8.5.
In relation to the provision of a sponsor service, a company with a premium listing must cooperate with its sponsor by providing the sponsor with all information reasonably requested by the sponsor for the purpose of carrying out the sponsor service in accordance with LR 8.

[deleted]

A listed company must comply with LR 6.14.1R to LR 6.14.3R at all times.

Where the FCA has modified LR 6.14.1R to accept a percentage lower than 25% on the basis that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage, but the FCA considers that in practice the market for the shares is not operating properly, the FCA may revoke the modification in accordance with LR 1.2.1 R (4).

Publication of unaudited financial information

This rule applies to a listed company that has published:

(a) any unaudited financial information in a class 1 circular or a prospectus; or
(b) any profit forecast or profit estimate.

The first time a listed company publishes financial information as required by DTR 4.1 after the publication of the unaudited financial information, profit forecast or profit estimate, it must:

(a) reproduce that financial information, profit forecast or profit estimate in its next annual report and accounts;
(b) produce and disclose in the annual report and accounts the actual figures for the same period covered by the information reproduced under paragraph (2)(a); and
(c) provide an explanation of the difference, if there is a difference of 10% or more between the figures required by paragraph (2)(b) and those reproduced under paragraph (2)(a).

LR 9.2.18 R does not apply to:

(1) pro forma financial information prepared in accordance with Annex 1 and Annex 20 of the PR Regulation; or
(2) any preliminary statements of annual results or half-yearly or quarterly reports that are reproduced with the unaudited financial information.
Externally managed companies

9.2.20 R An issuer must at all times ensure that the discretion of its board to make strategic decisions on behalf of the company has not been limited or transferred to a person outside the issuer’s group, and that the board has the capability to act on key strategic matters in the absence of a recommendation from a person outside the issuer’s group.

Voting on matters relevant to premium listing

9.2.21 R Where the provisions of ■ LR 5.2, ■ LR 5.4A, ■ LR 9.4, ■ LR 9.5, ■ LR 10, ■ LR 11, ■ LR 12 or ■ LR 15 require a shareholder vote to be taken, that vote must be decided by a resolution of the holders of the listed company’s shares that have been admitted to premium listing. Where the provisions of ■ LR 5.2.5 R (2), ■ LR 5.4A.4 R (3)(b)(ii), ■ LR 5.4A.4R(3)(c)(ii) or ■ LR 9.2.2E R require that the resolution must in addition be approved by the independent shareholders, only independent shareholders who hold the listed company’s shares that have been admitted to premium listing can vote.

The FCA may modify the operation of ■ LR 9.2.21 R in exceptional circumstances, for example to accommodate the operation of:

1. special share arrangements designed to protect the national interest;
2. dual listed company voting arrangements; and
3. voting rights attaching to preference shares or similar securities that are in arrears.

Notifications to the FCA: notifications regarding continuing obligations

9.2.23 R A listed company must notify the FCA without delay if it does not comply with any continuing obligation set out in ■ LR 9.2.2A R, ■ LR 9.2.2ABR, ■ LR 9.2.2ADR, ■ LR 9.2.2E R, ■ LR 9.2.2F R, ■ LR 9.2.15 R or ■ LR 9.2.21 R.

Notifications to the FCA: notifications regarding compliance with independence provisions

9.2.24 R A listed company must notify the FCA without delay if:

1. it no longer complies with ■ LR 9.2.2G R;
2. it becomes aware that an undertaking in ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) has not been complied with by the controlling shareholder or any of its associates; or
3. it becomes aware that a procurement obligation (as set out in ■ LR 6.5.5R(2)(a) or ■ LR 9.2.2BR (2)(a)) contained in an agreement entered into under ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) has not been complied with by a controlling shareholder.
9.2.25 **R** A listed company must notify the FCA without delay if its annual financial report contains a statement of the kind specified under LR 9.8.4AR.

9.2.26 **G** Where a listed company is unable to comply with a continuing obligation set out in LR 9.2, it should consider seeking a cancellation of listing or applying for a transfer of its listing category. In particular, the listed company should note LR 5.2.2 G (2) and LR 5.4A.16 G.
Proxy forms

A listed company must ensure that, in addition to its obligations under the Companies Act 2006, a proxy form:

(1) [deleted]

(2) provides for at least three-way voting on all resolutions intended to be proposed (except that it is not necessary to provide proxy forms with three-way voting on procedural resolutions); and

(3) [deleted]

(4) states that if it is returned without an indication as to how the proxy shall vote on any particular matter, the proxy will exercise his discretion as to whether, and if so how, he votes.

Proxy forms for re-election of retiring directors

If the resolutions to be proposed include the re-election of retiring directors and the number of retiring directors standing for re-election exceeds five, the proxy form may give shareholders the opportunity to vote for or against (or abstain from voting on) the re-election of the retiring directors as a whole but must also allow votes to be cast for or against (or for shareholders to abstain from voting on) the re-election of the retiring directors individually.

[deleted]
Sanctions

Where a listed company has taken a power in its constitution to impose sanctions on a shareholder who is in default in complying with a notice served under section 793 of the Companies Act 2006 (Notice by company requiring information about interests in its shares):

(1) sanctions may not take effect earlier than 14 days after service of the notice;

(2) for a shareholding of less than 0.25% of the shares of a particular class (calculated exclusive of treasury shares), the only sanction the constitution may provide for is a prohibition against attending meetings and voting;

(3) for a shareholding of 0.25% or more of the shares of a particular class (calculated exclusive of treasury shares), the constitution may provide:
   (a) for a prohibition against attending meetings and voting;
   (b) for the withholding of the payment of dividends (including shares issued in lieu of dividend) on the shares concerned; and
   (c) for the placing of restrictions on the transfer of shares, provided that restrictions on transfer do not apply to a sale to a genuine unconnected third party (such as through a RIE or an overseas exchange or by the acceptance of a takeover offer); and

(4) any sanctions imposed in accordance with paragraph (2) or (3) above must cease to apply after a specified period of not more than seven days after the earlier of:
   (a) receipt by the issuer of notice that the shareholding has been sold to an unconnected third party through a RIE or an overseas exchange or by the acceptance of a takeover offer; and
   (b) due compliance, to the satisfaction of the issuer, with the notice under section 793.

Pre-emption rights

An overseas company with a premium listing is not required to comply with LR 9.3.9 R.

A listed company proposing to issue equity securities for cash or to sell treasury shares that are equity shares for cash must first offer those equity securities in proportion to their existing holdings to:

(1) existing holders of that class of equity shares (other than the listed company itself by virtue of it holding treasury shares); and

(2) holders of other equity shares of the listed company who are entitled to be offered them.

LR 9/12 www.handbook.fca.org.uk Release 45 Dec 2019
shareholders in accordance with section 570 (Disapplication of pre-emption rights: directors acting under general authorisation) or section 571 (Disapplication of pre-emption rights by special resolution) of the Companies Act 2006 and the issue of equity securities or sale of treasury shares that are equity shares by the listed company is within the terms of the authority; or

(2) a listed company undertaking a rights issue or open offer provided the disapplication of pre-emption rights is with respect to:

(a) equity securities representing fractional entitlements; or
(b) equity securities which the company considers necessary or expedient to exclude from the offer on account of the laws or regulatory requirements of a territory other than its country of incorporation unless that territory is the United Kingdom; or

(3) a listed company selling treasury shares for cash to an employee share scheme; or

(4) an overseas company with a premium listing if a disapplication of statutory pre-emption rights has been authorised by shareholders that is equivalent to an authority given in accordance either with section 570 or section 571 of the Companies Act 2006 or in accordance with the law of its country of incorporation provided that the country has implemented article 29 of Directive 77/91/EEC or article 33 of Directive 2012/30/EU and the issue of equity securities or sale of treasury shares that are equity shares by the listed company is within the terms of the authority; or

(5) an open-ended investment company.
9.4 Documents requiring prior approval

Employees share schemes and long-term incentive plans

9.4.1 R

(1) This rule applies to the following schemes of a listed company incorporated in the United Kingdom and of any of its major subsidiary undertaking (even if that major subsidiary undertaking is incorporated or operates overseas):

(a) an employees' share scheme if the scheme involves or may involve the issue of new shares or the transfer of treasury shares; and
(b) a long-term incentive scheme in which one or more directors of the listed company is eligible to participate.

(2) The listed company must ensure that the employees' share scheme or long-term incentive scheme is approved by an ordinary resolution of the shareholders of the listed company in general meeting before it is adopted.

9.4.2 R

LR 9.4.1 R does not apply to the following long-term incentive schemes:

(1) an arrangement where participation is offered on similar terms to all or substantially all employees of the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings whose employees are eligible to participate in the arrangement (provided that all or substantially all employees are not directors of the listed company); and

(2) an arrangement where the only participant is a director of the listed company (or an individual whose appointment as a director of the listed company is being contemplated) and the arrangement is established specifically to facilitate, in unusual circumstances, the recruitment or retention of the relevant individual.

9.4.3 R

For a scheme referred to in LR 9.4.2 R (2), the following information must be disclosed in the first annual report published by the listed company after the date on which the relevant individual becomes eligible to participate in the arrangement:

(1) all of the information prescribed in LR 13.8.11 R;
(2) the name of the sole participant;
(3) the date on which the participant first became eligible to participate in the arrangement;
(4) an explanation of why the circumstances in which the arrangement was established were unusual;

(5) the conditions to be satisfied under the terms of the arrangement; and

(6) the maximum award(s) under the terms of the arrangement or, if there is no maximum, the basis on which awards will be determined.

Discounted option arrangements

9.4.4 R

(1) This rule applies to the grant to a director or employee of a listed company or of any subsidiary undertaking of a listed company of an option to subscribe, warrant to subscribe or other similar right to subscribe for shares in the capital of the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings.

(2) A listed company must not, without the prior approval by an ordinary resolution of the shareholders of the listed company in a general meeting, grant the option, warrant or other right if the price per share payable on the exercise of the option, warrant or other similar right to subscribe is less than whichever of the following is used to calculate the exercise price:

(a) the market value of the share on the date when the exercise price is determined; or

(b) the market value of the share on the business day before that date; or

(c) the average of the market values for a number of dealing days within a period not exceeding 30 days immediately before that date.

9.4.5 R

★LR 9.4.4 R does not apply to the grant of an option to subscribe, warrant to subscribe or other similar right to subscribe for shares in the capital of a listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings:

(1) under an employees' share scheme if participation is offered on similar terms to all or substantially all employees of the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings whose employees are entitled to participate in the scheme; or

(2) following a take-over or reconstruction, in replacement for and on comparable terms with options to subscribe, warrants to subscribe or other similar rights to subscribe held immediately before the take-over or reconstruction for shares in either a company of which the listed company thereby obtains control or in any of that company's subsidiary undertakings.
## 9.5 Transactions

### Rights issue

**9.5.1 R** For a placing of rights arising from a *rights issue* before the official start of dealings, a *listed company* must ensure that:

1. The placing relates to at least 25% of the maximum number of *equity securities* offered;
2. The placees are committed to take up whatever is placed with them;
3. The price paid by the placees does not exceed the price at which the *equity securities* which are the subject of the *rights issue* are offered by more than one half of the calculated premium over that offer price (that premium being the difference between the offer price and the theoretical ex-rights price); and
4. The *equity securities* which are the subject of the *rights issue* are of the same class as the *equity securities* already listed.

**9.5.2 G** The FCA may modify R 9.5.1R (1) to allow the placing to relate to less than 25% if it is satisfied that requiring at least 25% would be detrimental to the success of the issue.

**9.5.3 G** In a *rights issue*, the FCA may list the *equity securities* at the same time as they are admitted to trading in nil paid form. On the *equity securities* being paid up and the allotment becoming unconditional, the *listing* will continue without any need for a further application to list fully paid *securities*.

**9.5.4 R** If existing *shareholders* do not take up their rights to subscribe in a *rights issue*:

1. The *listed company* must ensure that the *equity securities* to which the offer relates are offered for subscription or purchase on terms that any premium obtained over the subscription or purchase price (net of expenses) is to be for the account of the holders, except that if the proceeds for an existing holder do not exceed 5.00, the proceeds may be retained for the company’s benefit; and
2. The *equity securities* may be allotted or sold to underwriters, if on the expiry of the subscription period no premium (net of expenses) has been obtained.
A Listed company must ensure that for a rights issue the following are notified to a RIS as soon as possible:

1. the issue price and principal terms of the issue; and
2. the results of the issue and, if any rights not taken up are sold, details of the sale, including the date and price per share.

A listed company must ensure that the offer relating to a rights issue remains open for acceptance for at least 10 business days. For the purposes of calculating the period of 10 business days, the first business day is the date on which the offer is first open for acceptance.

Open offers

A listed company must ensure that the timetable for an open offer is approved by the RIE on which its equity securities are traded.

A listed company must ensure that the open offer remains open for acceptance for at least 10 business days. For the purposes of calculating the period of 10 business days, the first business day is the date on which the offer is first open for acceptance.

A listed company must ensure that in relation to communicating information on an open offer:

1. if the offer is subject to shareholder approval in general meeting the announcement must state that this is the case; and
2. the circular dealing with the offer must not contain any statement that might be taken to imply that the offer gives the same entitlements as a rights issue unless it is an offer with a compensatory element.

If existing shareholders do not take up their rights to subscribe in an open offer with a compensatory element:

1. the listed company must ensure that the equity securities to which the offer relates are offered for subscription or purchase on terms that any premium obtained over the subscription or purchase price (net of expenses) is to be for the account of the holders, except that if the proceeds for an existing holder do not exceed £5, the proceeds may be retained for the company’s benefit; and
2. the equity securities may be allotted or sold to underwriters, if on the expiry of the subscription period no premium (net of expenses) has been obtained.

A listed company must ensure that for a subscription in an open offer with a compensatory element the following are notified to a RIS as soon as possible:

1. the offer price and principal terms of the offer; and
(2) the results of the offer and, if any securities not taken up are sold, details of the sale, including the date and price per share.

Vendor consideration placing

9.5.9  R  A listed company must ensure that in a vendor consideration placing all vendors have an equal opportunity to participate in the placing.

Discounts not to exceed 10%

9.5.10  R  (1) If a listed company makes an open offer, placing, vendor consideration placing, offer for subscription of equity shares or an issue out of treasury (other than in respect of an employees’ share scheme) of a class already listed, the price must not be at a discount of more than 10% to the middle market price of those shares at the time of announcing the terms of the offer for an open offer or offer for subscription of equity shares or at the time of agreeing the placing for a placing or vendor consideration placing.

(2) In paragraph (1), the middle market price of equity shares means the middle market quotation for those equity shares as derived from the daily official list of the London Stock Exchange or any other publication of a RIE showing quotations for listed securities for the relevant date.

(2A) If a listed company makes an open offer, placing, vendor consideration placing or offer for subscription of equity shares during the trading day it may use an appropriate on-screen intra-day price derived from another market.

(3) Paragraph (1) does not apply to an offer or placing at a discount of more than 10% if:

(a) the terms of the offer or placing at that discount have been specifically approved by the issuer’s shareholders; or

(b) it is an issue of shares for cash or the sale of treasury shares for cash under a pre-existing general authority to disapply section 561 of the Companies Act 2006 (Existing shareholders’ rights of pre-emption).

(4) The listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible after it has agreed the terms of the offer or placing.

9.5.10A  G  On each occasion that the listed company plans to use an on-screen intra-day price it should discuss the source of the price in advance with the FCA. The FCA may be satisfied that there is sufficient justification for its use if the alternative market has an appropriate level of liquidity and the source is one that is widely accepted by the market.

Offer for sale or subscription

9.5.11  R  A listed company must ensure that for an offer for sale or an offer for subscription of equity securities:
(1) letters of allotment or acceptance are all issued simultaneously and numbered serially (and, where appropriate, split and certified by the listed company's registrars);

(2) if the equity securities may be held in uncertificated form, there is equal treatment of those who elect to hold the equity securities in certificated form and those who elect to hold them in uncertificated form;

(3) letters of regret are posted at the same time or not later than three business days after the letters of allotment or acceptance; and

(4) if a letter of regret is not posted at the same time as letters of allotment or acceptance, a notice to that effect is inserted in a national newspaper, to appear on the morning after the letters of allotment or acceptance are posted.

Reconstruction or refinancing

9.5.12

(1) If a listed company produces a circular containing proposals to be put to shareholders in a general meeting relating to a reconstruction or a re-financing, the circular must be produced in accordance with LR 13.3 and must include a working capital statement.

(2) The requirement for a working capital statement set out in paragraph (1) does not apply to a closed-ended investment fund.

(3) The working capital statement required by paragraph (1) must be prepared in accordance with item 3.1 of Annex 11 of the PR Regulation and on the basis that the reconstruction or the re-financing has taken place.

Fractional entitlements

9.5.13

If, for an issue of equity securities (other than an issue in lieu of dividend), a shareholders entitlement includes a fraction of a security, a listed company must ensure that the fraction is sold for the benefit of the holder except that if its value (net of expenses) does not exceed 5.00 it may be sold for the company's benefit. Sales of fractions may be made before listing is granted.

Further issues

9.5.14

When shares of the same class as shares that are listed are allotted, an application for admission to listing of such shares must be made as soon as possible and in any event within one month of the allotment. [Note: Article 64 CARD]

Temporary documents of title (including renounceable documents)

9.5.15

A listed company must ensure that any temporary document of title (other than one issued in global form) for an equity security:

(1) is serially numbered;

(2) states where applicable:
(a) the name and address of the first holder and names of joint holders (if any);
(b) for a fixed income security, the amount of the next payment of interest or dividend;
(c) the pro rata entitlement;
(d) the last date on which transfers were or will be accepted for registration for participation in the issue;
(e) how the securities rank for dividend or interest;
(f) the nature of the document of title and proposed date of issue;
(g) how fractions (if any) are to be treated; and
(h) for a rights issue, the time, being not less than 10 business days calculated in accordance with LR 9.5.6 R, in which the offer may be accepted, and how equity securities not taken up will be dealt with; and

(3) if renounceable:

(a) states in a heading that the document is of value and negotiable;
(b) advises holders of equity securities who are in any doubt as to what action to take to consult appropriate independent advisers immediately;
(c) states that where all of the securities have been sold by the addressee (other than ex rights or ex capitalisation), the document should be passed to the person through whom the sale was effected for transmission to the purchaser;
(d) has the form of renunciation and the registration instructions printed on the back of, or attached to, the document;
(e) includes provision for splitting (without fee) and for split documents to be certified by an official of the company or authorised agent;
(f) provides for the last day for renunciation to be the second business day after the last day for splitting; and
(g) if at the same time as an allotment is made of shares issued for cash, shares of the same class are also allotted credited as fully paid to vendors or others, provides for the period for renunciation to be the same as, but no longer than, that provided for in the case of shares issued for cash.

Definitive documents of title

A listed company must ensure that any definitive document of title for an equity share (other than a bearer security) includes the following matters on its face (or on the reverse in the case of paragraphs (5) and (7)):

(1) the authority under which the listed company is constituted and the country of incorporation and registered number (if any);
(2) the number or amount of securities the certificate represents and, if applicable, the number and denomination of units (in the top right-hand corner);
(3) a footnote stating that no transfer of the security or any portion of it represented by the certificate can be registered without production of the certificate;

(4) if applicable, the minimum amount and multiples thereof in which the security is transferable;

(5) the date of the certificate;

(6) [deleted]

(7) for equity shares with preferential rights, on the face (or, if not practicable, on the reverse), a statement of the conditions thereof as to capital, dividends and (where applicable) conversion.
9.6 Notifications

Copies of documents

9.6.1 A listed company must forward to the FCA for publication through the document viewing facility, two copies of all circulars, notices, reports or other documents to which the listing rules apply at the same time as they are issued.

9.6.2 A listed company must forward to the FCA, for publication through the document viewing facility, two copies of all resolutions passed by the listed company other than resolutions concerning ordinary business at an annual general meeting as soon as possible after the relevant general meeting.

9.6.3 (1) A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible when a document has been forwarded to the FCA under LR 9.6.1 R or LR 9.6.2 R unless the full text of the document is provided to the RIS.

(2) A notification made under paragraph (1) must set out where copies of the relevant document can be obtained.

Notifications relating to capital

9.6.4 A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible (unless otherwise indicated in this rule) of the following information relating to its capital:

(1) any proposed change in its capital structure including the structure of its listed debt securities, save that an announcement of a new issue may be delayed while marketing or underwriting is in progress;

(2) [deleted]

(3) any redemption of listed shares including details of the number of shares redeemed and the number of shares of that class outstanding following the redemption;

(4) any extension of time granted for the currency of temporary documents of title; and

(5) [deleted]

(6) (except in relation to a block listing of securities) the results of any new issue of equity securities or a public offering of existing equity securities.
Where the securities are subject to an underwriting agreement a listed company may, at its discretion and subject to the obligations in article 17 of the Market Abuse Regulation, delay notifying a RIS as required by LR 9.6.4R(6) for up to two business days until the obligation by the underwriter to take or procure others to take securities is finally determined or lapses. In the case of an issue or offer of securities which is not underwritten, notification of the result must be made as soon as it is known.

Notification of board changes and directors’ details

A listed company must notify a RIS of any change to the board including:

1. the appointment of a new director stating the appointee’s name and whether the position is executive, non-executive or chairman and the nature of any specific function or responsibility of the position;
2. the resignation, removal or retirement of a director (unless the director retires by rotation and is re-appointed at a general meeting of the listed company’s shareholders);
3. important changes to the role, functions or responsibilities of a director; and
4. the effective date of the change if it is not with immediate effect;

as soon as possible and in any event by the end of the business day following the decision or receipt of notice about the change by the company.

If the effective date of the board change is not yet known, the notification required by LR 9.6.11 R should state this fact and the listed company should notify a RIS as soon as the effective date has been decided.

A listed company must notify a RIS of the following information in respect of any new director appointed to the board as soon as possible following the decision to appoint the director and in any event within five business days of the decision:
(1) details of all directorships held by the director in any other publicly quoted company at any time in the previous five years, indicating whether or not he is still a director;

(2) any unspent convictions in relation to indictable offences;

(3) details of any receiverships, compulsory liquidations, creditors voluntary liquidations, administrations, company voluntary arrangements or any composition or arrangement with its creditors generally or any class of its creditors of any company where the director was an executive director at the time of, or within the 12 months preceding, such events;

(4) details of any compulsory liquidations, administrations or partnership voluntary arrangements of any partnerships where the director was a partner at the time of, or within the 12 months preceding, such events;

(5) details of receiverships of any asset of such person or of a partnership of which the director was a partner at the time of, or within the 12 months preceding, such event; and

(6) details of any public criticisms of the director by statutory or regulatory authorities (including designated professional bodies) and whether the director has ever been disqualified by a court from acting as a director of a company or from acting in the management or conduct of the affairs of any company.

A listed company must, in respect of any current director, notify a RIS as soon as possible of:

(1) any changes in the information set out in LR 9.6.13R (2) to LR 9.6.13R (6); and

(2) any new directorships held by the director in any other publicly quoted company.

Notification of lock-up arrangements

A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible of information relating to the disposal of equity shares under an exemption allowed in the lock-up arrangements disclosed in accordance with the PR Regulation.

A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible of the details of any variation in the lock-up arrangements disclosed in accordance with the PR Regulation or any subsequent announcement.
**Notification of shareholder resolutions**

9.6.18 A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible after a general meeting of all resolutions passed by the company other than resolutions concerning ordinary business passed at an annual general meeting.

**Change of name**

9.6.19 A listed company which changes its name must, as soon as possible:

1. notify a RIS of the change, stating the date on which it has taken effect;
2. inform the FCA in writing of the change; and
3. where the listed company is incorporated in the United Kingdom, send the FCA a copy of the revised certificate of incorporation issued by the Registrar of Companies.

**Change of accounting date**

9.6.20 A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible of:

1. any change in its accounting reference date; and
2. the new accounting reference date.

9.6.21 A listed company must prepare and publish a second interim report in accordance with DTR 4.2 if the effect of the change in the accounting reference date is to extend the accounting period to more than 14 months.

9.6.22 The second interim report must be prepared and published in respect of either:

1. the period up to the old accounting reference date; or
2. the period up to a date not more than six months prior to the new accounting reference date.
9.7A Preliminary statement of annual results, and statement of dividends

Preliminary statement of annual results

9.7A.1 If a listed company prepares a preliminary statement of annual results:

(1) the statement must be published as soon as possible after it has been approved by the board;

(2) the statement must be agreed with the company’s auditors prior to publication;

(3) the statement must show the figures in the form of a table, including the items required for a half-yearly report, consistent with the presentation to be adopted in the annual accounts for that financial year;

(4) the statement must give details of the nature of any likely modification or emphasis-of-matter paragraph that may be contained in the auditors’ report required to be included with the annual financial report; and

(5) the statement must include any significant additional information necessary for the purpose of assessing the results being announced.

Statement of dividends

9.7A.2 A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible after the board has approved any decision to pay or make any dividend or other distribution on listed equity or to withhold any dividend or interest payment on listed securities giving details of:

(1) the exact net amount payable per share;

(2) the payment date;

(3) the record date (where applicable); and

(4) any foreign income dividend election, together with any income tax treated as paid at the lower rate and not repayable.
Omission of information

9.7A.3 The FCA may authorise the omission of information required by LR 9.7A.1 R or LR 9.7A.2 R if it considers that disclosure of such information would be contrary to the public interest or seriously detrimental to the listed company, provided that such omission would not be likely to mislead the public with regard to facts and circumstances, knowledge of which is essential for the assessment of the shares.
9.8 Annual financial report

[Note: LR 9.8 does not apply to a listed company with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, or to a listed company with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013. As set out in LR TR 11, a listed company with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, or a listed company with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013, must instead comply with the requirements set out in LR App 2.]

9.8.1 [deleted]

9.8.2 [deleted]

9.8.3 [deleted]

Information to be included in annual report and accounts

9.8.4 In addition to the requirements set out in DTR 4.1 a listed company must include in its annual financial report, where applicable, the following:

1. a statement of the amount of interest capitalised by the group during the period under review with an indication of the amount and treatment of any related tax relief;

2. any information required by LR 9.2.18 R (Publication of unaudited financial information);

3. [deleted]

4. details of any long-term incentive schemes as required by LR 9.4.3 R;

5. details of any arrangements under which a director of the company has waived or agreed to waive any emoluments from the company or any subsidiary undertaking;

6. where a director has agreed to waive future emoluments, details of such waiver together with those relating to emoluments which were waived during the period under review;

7. in the case of any allotment for cash of equity securities made during the period under review otherwise than to the holders of the company's equity shares in proportion to their holdings of such equity.
shares and which has not been specifically authorised by the company’s shareholders:

(a) the classes of shares allotted and for each class of shares, the number allotted, their aggregate nominal value and the consideration received by the company for the allotment;

(b) the names of the allottees, if less than six in number, and in the case of six or more allottees a brief generic description of each new class of equity holder (e.g. holder of loan stock);

(c) the market price of the allotted securities on the date on which the terms of the issue were fixed; and

(d) the date on which the terms of the issue were fixed;

(8) the information required by paragraph (7) must be given for any unlisted major subsidiary undertaking of the company;

(9) where a listed company has listed shares in issue and is a subsidiary undertaking of another company, details of the participation by the parent undertaking in any placing made during the period under review;

(10) details of any contract of significance subsisting during the period under review:

(a) to which the listed company, or one of its subsidiary undertakings, is a party and in which a director of the listed company is or was materially interested; and

(b) between the listed company, or one of its subsidiary undertakings, and a controlling shareholder;

(11) details of any contract for the provision of services to the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings by a controlling shareholder, subsisting during the period under review, unless:

(a) it is a contract for the provision of services which it is the principal business of the shareholder to provide; and

(b) it is not a contract of significance;

(12) details of any arrangement under which a shareholder has waived or agreed to waive any dividends;

(13) where a shareholder has agreed to waive future dividends, details of such waiver together with those relating to dividends which are payable during the period under review; and

(14) a statement made by the board:

(a) that the listed company has entered into any agreement required under LR 9.2.2ADR(1); or

(b) where the listed company has not entered into an agreement required under LR 9.2.2ADR(1):

(i) a statement that the FCA has been notified of that non-compliance in accordance with LR 9.2.23 R; and

(ii) a brief description of the background to and reasons for failing to enter into the agreement that enables shareholders
to evaluate the impact of non-compliance on the listed company; and

(c) that:

(i) the listed company has complied with the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) during the period under review;

(ii) so far as the listed company is aware, the undertakings in ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) have been complied with during the period under review by the controlling shareholder or any of its associates; and

(iii) so far as the listed company is aware, the procurement obligation (as set out in ■ LR 6.5.5R(2)(a) or ■ LR 9.2.2BR (2)(a)) included in any agreement entered into under ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) has been complied with during the period under review by a controlling shareholder; or

(d) where an undertaking in ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) or a procurement obligation (as set out in ■ LR 6.5.5R(2)(a) or ■ LR 9.2.2BR (2)(a)) included in any agreement entered into under ■ LR 6.5.4R or ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) has not been complied with during the period under review:

(i) a statement that the FCA has been notified of that non-compliance in accordance with ■ LR 9.2.24 R; and

(ii) a brief description of the background to and reasons for failing to comply with the relevant undertaking or procurement obligation that enables shareholders to evaluate the impact of non-compliance on the listed company.

Where an independent director declines to support a statement made under ■ LR 9.8.4R (14)(a) or ■ (c), the statement must record this fact.

Where a listed company’s annual financial report contains a statement of the type referred to in ■ LR 9.8.4R (14)(b) or ■ (d), the FCA may still take any action it considers necessary in relation to the underlying breach by the listed company of ■ LR 9.2.2ADR(1) or ■ LR 9.2.2GR.

The listed company’s annual financial report must include the information required under ■ LR 9.8.4 R in a single identifiable section, unless the annual financial report includes a cross reference table indicating where that information is set out.

A listed company need not include with the annual report and accounts details of waivers of dividends of less than 1% of the total value of any dividend provided that some payment has been made on each share of the relevant class during the relevant calendar year.

Additional information

In the case of a listed company incorporated in the United Kingdom, the following additional items must be included in its annual financial report:
(1) a statement setting out all the interests (in respect of which transactions are notifiable to the company under article 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation) of each person who is a director of the listed company as at the end of the period under review including:

(a) all changes in the interests of each director that have occurred between the end of the period under review and a date not more than one month prior to the date of the notice of the annual general meeting; or

(b) if there have been no changes in the period described in paragraph (a), a statement that there have been no changes in the interests of each director.

Interests of each director includes the interests of connected persons of which the listed company is, or ought upon reasonable enquiry to become, aware.

(2) a statement showing the interests disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 as at the end of the period under review and:

(a) all interests disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 that have occurred between the end of the period under review and a date not more than one month prior to the date of the notice of the annual general meeting; or

(b) if no interests have been disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 in the period described in (a), a statement that no changes have been disclosed to the listed company.

(3) statements by the directors on:

(a) the appropriateness of adopting the going concern basis of accounting (containing the information set out in provision C.1.3 of the UK Corporate Governance Code); and

(b) their assessment of the prospects of the company (containing the information set out in provision C.2.2 of the UK Corporate Governance Code);

prepared in accordance with the ‘Guidance on Risk Management, Internal Control and Related Financial and Business Reporting’ published by the Financial Reporting Council in September 2014;

(4) a statement setting out:

(a) details of any shareholders authority for the purchase, by the listed company of its own shares that is still valid at the end of the period under review;

(b) in the case of purchases made otherwise than through the market or by tender to all shareholders, the names of sellers of such shares purchased, or proposed to be purchased, by the listed company during the period under review;

(c) in the case of any purchases made otherwise than through the market or by tender or partial offer to all shareholders, or options or contracts to make such purchases, entered into since the end of the period covered by the report, information equivalent to that required under Part 2of Schedule 7 to the Large & Medium Sized Companies and Groups (Accounts and
9.8A (1) The effect of LR 9.8.6R (1) is that a listed company is required to set out a ‘snapshot’ of the total interests of a director and his or her connected persons, as at the end of the period under review (including certain information to update it as at a date not more than a month before the date of the notice of the annual general meeting). The interests that need to be set out are limited to those in respect of which transactions fall to be notified under the notification requirement for PDMRs in article 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation. Persons who are directors during, but not at the end of, the period under review need not be included.

9.8.7 An overseas company with a premium listing must include in its annual report and accounts the information in LR 9.8.6R (5), LR 9.8.6R (6) and LR 9.8.8 R.
(1) An overseas company with a premium listing that is not required to comply with requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.2 (Corporate governance statements) must comply with DTR 7.2 as if it were an issuer to which that section applies.

(2) An overseas company with a premium listing which complies with LR 9.8.7 R will be taken to satisfy the requirements of DTR 7.2.2 R and DTR 7.2.3 R, but (unless it is required to comply with requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.2) must comply with all of the other requirements of DTR 7.2 as if it were an issuer to which that section applies.

Report to shareholders

9.8.8 R
The report to the shareholders by the Board required by LR 9.8.6R (7) must contain details of the unexpired term of any director’s service contract of a director proposed for election or re-election at the forthcoming annual general meeting, and, if any director proposed for election or re-election does not have a directors’ service contract, a statement to that effect.

Information required by law

9.8.9 G
The requirements of LR 9.8.6R (6) relating to corporate governance are additional to the information required by law to be included in the listed company’s annual report and accounts.

Auditors report

9.8.10 R
A listed company must ensure that the auditors review each of the following before the annual report is published:

(1) LR 9.8.6R (3) (statements by the directors regarding going concern and longer-term viability); and

(2) the parts of the statement required by LR 9.8.6R (6) (corporate governance) that relate to the following provisions of the UK Corporate Governance Code:

(a) C.1.1;
(b) C.2.1 and C.2.3; and
(c) C.3.1 to C.3.8.

9.8.11 R [deleted]

9.8.12 R [deleted]

Strategic report with supplementary information

9.8.13 R
Any strategic report with supplementary information provided to shareholders by a listed company as permitted under section 426 of the Companies Act 2006, must disclose:
(1) earnings per share; and

(2) the information required for a strategic report set out in or under the Companies Act 2006 and the supplementary material required under section 426A of the Companies Act 2006.
THE MODEL CODE (R)

Table: The Model Code [deleted]
Chapter 10

Significant transactions:
Premium listing
10.1 Preliminary

Application

10.1.1 This chapter applies to a company that has a premium listing.

Purpose

10.1.2 The purpose of this chapter is to ensure that shareholders of companies with securities listed:

(1) are notified of certain transactions entered into by the listed company; and

(2) have the opportunity to vote on larger proposed transactions.

Meaning of "transaction"

10.1.3 In this chapter (except where specifically provided to the contrary) a reference to a transaction by a listed company:

(1) (subject to paragraphs (3),(4) and (5)) includes all agreements (including amendments to agreements) entered into by the listed company or its subsidiary undertakings;

(2) includes the grant or acquisition of an option as if the option had been exercised except that, if exercise is solely at the listed company's or subsidiary undertaking's discretion, the transaction will be classified on exercise and only the consideration (if any) for the option will be classified on the grant or acquisition;

(3) excludes a transaction in the ordinary course of business;

(4) excludes an issue of securities, or a transaction to raise finance, which does not involve the acquisition or disposal of any fixed asset of the listed company or of its subsidiary undertakings; and

(5) excludes any transaction between the listed company and its wholly-owned subsidiary undertaking or between its wholly-owned subsidiary undertakings.

10.1.4 This chapter is intended to cover transactions that are outside the ordinary course of the listed company's business and may change a security holder's economic interest in the company's assets or liabilities (whether or not the change in the assets or liabilities is recognised on the company's balance sheet).
In assessing whether a transaction is in the ordinary course of a company’s business under this chapter, the FCA will have regard to the size and incidence of similar transactions which the company has entered into. The FCA may determine that a transaction is not in the ordinary course of business because of its size or incidence.
10.2 Classifying transactions

Classifying transactions

A transaction is classified by assessing its size relative to that of the listed company proposing to make it. The comparison of size is made by using the percentage ratios resulting from applying the class test calculations to a transaction. The class tests are set out in LR 10 Annex 1 (and modified or added to for specialist companies under LR 10.7).

Except as otherwise provided in this chapter, transactions are classified as follows:

1. [deleted]

2. **Class 2 transaction**: a transaction where any percentage ratio is 5% or more but each is less than 25%; and

3. **Class 1 transaction**: a transaction where any percentage ratio is 25% or more.

4. [deleted]

If an issuer is proposing to enter into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover it should consider LR 5.6.

[deleted]

Indemnities and similar arrangements

1. Any agreement or arrangement with a party (other than a wholly owned subsidiary undertaking of the listed company):
   1. under which a listed company agrees to discharge any liabilities for costs, expenses, commissions or losses incurred by or on behalf of that party, whether or not on a contingent basis;
   2. which is exceptional; and
   3. under which the maximum liability is either unlimited, or is equal to or exceeds an amount equal to 25% of the average of the listed company’s profits (as calculated for classification purposes) for the last three financial years (losses should be taken as nil profit and included in this average);
is to be treated as a class 1 transaction.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a break fee arrangement (see \[LR 10.2.6A R\], \[LR 10.2.6B G\] and \[LR 10.2.7 R\] which deal with break fee arrangements).

10.2.5

For the purposes of \[LR 10.2.4R (1)\], the FCA considers the following indemnities not to be exceptional:

(1) those customarily given in connection with sale and purchase agreements;

(2) those customarily given to underwriters or placing agents in an underwriting or placing agreement;

(3) those given to advisers against liabilities to third parties arising out of providing advisory services; and

(4) any other indemnity that is specifically permitted to be given to a director or auditor under the Companies Act 2006.

10.2.6

If the calculation under \[LR 10.2.4R (1)\] produces an anomalous result, the FCA may disregard the calculation and modify that rule to substitute other relevant indicators of the size of the indemnity or other arrangement given, for example 1% of market capitalisation.

Break fee arrangements

10.2.6A

An arrangement is a break fee arrangement if the purpose of the arrangement is that a compensatory sum will become payable by a listed company to another party (or parties) to a proposed transaction if the proposed transaction fails or is materially impeded and there is no independent substantive commercial rationale for the arrangement.

10.2.6B

(1) The following arrangements will meet the definition of break fee arrangements in \[LR 10.2.6A R\] (although this list is not intended to be exhaustive): ‘no shop’ and ‘go shop’ type provisions, which require payment of a sum to a party in the event the seller finds an alternative purchaser; a requirement to pay another party’s wasted costs in the event a transaction fails; non refundable deposits.

(2) In contrast, payments in the nature of damages (whether liquidated or unliquidated) for a breach of an obligation with an independent substantive commercial rationale, for example the typical business protection covenants that will apply between exchange and completion of a share or asset acquisition agreement or co-operation and information access obligations relating to obtaining merger or other clearances, are not break fee arrangements.

10.2.7

(1) Sums payable pursuant to break fee arrangements in respect of a transaction are to be treated as a class 1 transaction if the total value of those sums exceeds:
(a) if the listed company is being acquired, 1% of the value of the listed company calculated by reference to the offer price; and

(b) in any other case, 1% of the market capitalisation of the listed company.

(1A) The total value of sums payable pursuant to break fee arrangements for the purpose of paragraph (1) is the sum of:

(a) any amounts paid or payable pursuant to break fee arrangements in relation to the same transaction or in relation to the same target assets or business in the 12 months prior to the date the most recent arrangements were agreed unless those arrangements were approved by shareholders; and

(b) the aggregate of the maximum amounts payable pursuant to break fee arrangements in relation to the transaction; save that if the arrangements are such that a particular sum will only become payable in circumstances in which another sum does not, the lower sum may be left out of the calculation of the total value.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(a):

(a) the 1% limit is to be calculated on the basis of the fully diluted equity share capital of the listed company;

(b) any VAT payable is to be taken into account in determining whether the 1% limit would be exceeded (except to the extent that the VAT is recoverable by the listed company); and

(c) for a securities exchange offer, the value of the listed company is to be fixed by reference to the value of the offer at the time the transaction is announced (and is not to be taken as fluctuating as a result of subsequent movements in the price of the consideration securities after the announcement).

**Issues by major subsidiary undertakings**

10.2.8  
If:

1. a major subsidiary undertaking of a listed company issues equity shares for cash or in exchange for other securities or to reduce indebtedness;

2. the issue would dilute the listed company's percentage interest in the major subsidiary undertaking; and

3. the economic effect of the dilution is equivalent to a disposal of 25% or more of the aggregate of the gross assets or profits (after the deduction of all charges except taxation) of the group;

the issue is to be treated as a class 1 transaction.

10.2.9  
LR 10.2.8 R does not apply if the major subsidiary undertaking is itself a listed company.
**Aggregating transactions**

10.2.10  
(1) Transactions completed during the 12 months before the date of the latest transaction must be aggregated with that transaction for the purposes of classification if:

(a) they are entered into by the company with the same person or with persons connected with one another;

(b) they involve the acquisition or disposal of securities or an interest in one particular company; or

(c) together they lead to substantial involvement in a business activity which did not previously form a significant part of the company’s principal activities.

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply in relation to a break fee arrangement (see LR 10.2.6A R, LR 10.2.6B G and LR 10.2.7 R which deal with break fee arrangements).

(3) If under this rule aggregation of transactions results in a requirement for shareholder approval, then that approval is required only for the latest transaction.

10.2.11  
The FCA may modify these rules to require the aggregation of transactions in circumstances other than those specified in LR 10.2.10 R.

**Note:** If an issuer is proposing to enter into a transaction that could be a Class 1 transaction or reverse takeover it is required under LR 8 to obtain the guidance of a sponsor to assess the potential application of LR 10.
LR 10 : Significant transactions:
Premium listing

10.3

10.3.1 [deleted]

10.3.2 [deleted]
10.4 Class 2 requirements

Notification of class 2 transactions

10.4.1 R

(1) A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible after the terms of a class 2 transaction are agreed.

(2) The notification must include:

(a) details of the transaction, including the name of the other party to the transaction;
(b) a description of the business carried on by, or using, the net assets the subject of the transaction;
(c) the consideration, and how it is being satisfied (including the terms of any arrangements for deferred consideration);
(d) the value of the gross assets the subject of the transaction;
(e) the profits attributable to the assets the subject of the transaction;
(f) the effect of the transaction on the listed company including any benefits which are expected to accrue to the company as a result of the transaction;
(g) details of any service contracts of proposed directors of the listed company;
(h) for a disposal, the application of the sale proceeds;
(i) for a disposal, if securities are to form part of the consideration received, a statement whether the securities are to be sold or retained; and
(j) details of key individuals important to the business or company the subject of the transaction.

Supplementary notification

10.4.2 R

(1) A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible if, after the notification under ■ LR 10.4.1 R, it becomes aware that:

(a) there has been a significant change affecting any matter contained in that earlier notification; or
(b) a significant new matter has arisen which would have been required to be mentioned in that earlier notification if it had arisen at the time of the preparation of that notification.

(2) The supplementary notification must give details of the change or new matter and also contain a statement that, except as disclosed,
there has been no significant change affecting any matter contained in the earlier notification and no other significant new matter has arisen which would have been required to be mentioned in that earlier notification if it had arisen at the time of the preparation of that notification.

(3) In paragraphs (1) and (2), significant means significant for the purpose of making an informed assessment of the assets and liabilities, financial position, profits and losses and prospects of the listed company and the rights attaching to any securities forming part of the consideration. It includes a change in the terms of the transaction that affects the percentage ratios and requires the transaction to be reclassified into a higher category.
10.5 Class 1 requirements

Notification and shareholder approval

10.5.1 A listed company must, in relation to a class 1 transaction:

(1) comply with the requirements of §LR 10.4 (Class 2 requirements) for the transaction;

(2) send an explanatory circular to its shareholders and obtain their prior approval in a general meeting for the transaction; and

(3) ensure that any agreement effecting the transaction is conditional on that approval being obtained.

Note: LR 13 sets out requirements for the content and approval of class 1 circulars.

Material change to terms of transaction

10.5.2 If, after obtaining shareholder approval but before the completion of a class 1 transaction or a reverse takeover, there is a material change to the terms of the transaction, the listed company must comply again separately with §LR 10.5.1 R in relation to the transaction.

The FCA would (amongst other things) generally consider an increase of 10% or more in the consideration payable to be a material change to the terms of the transaction.

Supplementary circulars

10.5.4 (1) If a listed company becomes aware of a matter described in (2) after the publication of a circular that seeks shareholder approval for a transaction expressly requiring a vote by the listing rules, but before the date of a general meeting, it must, as soon as practicable:

(a) advise the FCA of the matters of which it has become aware; and

(b) send a supplementary circular to holders of its listed equity shares providing an explanation of the matters referred to in (2).

(2) The matters referred to in (1) are

(a) a material change affecting any matter the listed company is required to have disclosed in a circular; or
(b) a material new matter which the *listed company* would have been required to disclose in the *circular* if it had arisen at the time of its publication.

(3) The *listed company* must have regard to ■ LR 13.3.1R (3) when considering the materiality of any change or new matter under ■ LR 10.5.4R (2).

10.5.5 ■ LR 13 applies in relation to a supplementary *circular*. It may be necessary to adjourn a convened shareholder meeting if a supplementary *circular* cannot be sent to holders of *listed equity shares* at least 7 days prior to the convened shareholder meeting as required by ■ LR 13.1.9 R.
10.7 Transactions by specialist companies

Classification of transactions by listed property companies

10.7.1 LR 10 Annex 1 is modified as follows in relation to acquisitions or disposals of property by a listed property company:

(1) for the purposes of paragraph 2R(1) (the gross assets test), the assets test is calculated by dividing the transaction consideration by the gross assets of the listed property company and paragraphs 2R(5) and 2R(6) do not apply;

(2) for the purposes of paragraph 2R(1) (the gross assets test), if the transaction is an acquisition of land to be developed, the assets test is calculated by dividing the transaction consideration and any financial commitments relating to the development by the gross assets of the listed property company and paragraphs 2R(5) and 2R(6) do not apply;

(3) for the purposes of paragraph 2R(2), the gross assets of a listed property company are, at the option of the company:

   - the aggregate of the company’s share capital and reserves (excluding minority interests);
   - the book value of the company’s properties (excluding those properties classified as current assets in the latest published annual report and accounts); or
   - the published valuation of the company’s properties (excluding those properties classified as current assets in the latest published annual report and accounts);

(4) for the purposes of paragraph 4R(1) (the profits test), profits means the net annual rent;

(5) paragraph 5R (the consideration test) does not apply but instead the test in ■ LR 10.7.2 R applies; and

(6) paragraph 7R (the gross capital test) applies to disposals as well as acquisitions of property.

10.7.2 (1) In addition to the tests in ■ LR 10 Annex 1, if the transaction is an acquisition of property by a listed property company and any of the consideration is in the equity shares of that company, the listed company must determine the percentage ratios that result from the calculations under the test in (2).
LR 10 : Significant transactions: Premium listing

Section 10.7 : Transactions by specialist companies

(2) The share capital test is calculated by dividing the number of consideration shares to be issued by the number of equity shares in issue (excluding treasury shares).

10.7.3 R LR 10 does not apply to the acquisition or disposal by a listed property company of a property in the ordinary course of business which:

(1) for an acquisition, will be classified as a current asset in the company’s published accounts; or

(2) for a disposal, was so classified in the company’s published accounts.

10.7.4 G LR 10 may apply to subsequent transfers of property assets from current to fixed assets or from fixed to current assets in the accounts of a property company.

Classification of transactions by listed mineral companies

10.7.5 R (1) In addition to the tests in LR 10 Annex 1, a listed mineral company undertaking a transaction involving significant mineral resources or rights to significant mineral resources must determine the percentage ratios that result from the calculations under the test in paragraph (2).

(2) The reserves test is calculated by dividing the volume or amount of the proven reserves and probable reserves to be acquired or disposed of by the volume or amount of the aggregate proven reserves and probable reserves of the mineral company making the acquisition or disposal.

10.7.6 G If the mineral resources are not directly comparable, the FCA may modify LR 10.7.5R (2) to permit valuations to be used instead of amounts or volumes.

10.7.7 R When calculating the size of a transaction under LR 10 Annex 1 and LR 10.7.5 R, account must be taken of any associated transactions or loans effected or intended to be effected, and any contingent liabilities or commitments.

Classification of transactions by listed scientific research based companies

10.7.8 G A listed scientific research based company undertaking a transaction should consult the FCA at an early stage to determine whether industry specific tests are required instead of or in addition to the class tests in LR 10 Annex 1.
Class 1 disposals by companies in severe financial difficulty

10.8.1 A listed company in severe financial difficulty may find itself with no alternative but to dispose of a substantial part of its business within a short time frame to meet its ongoing working capital requirements or to reduce its liabilities. Due to time constraints it may not be able to prepare a circular and convene an extraordinary general meeting to obtain prior shareholder approval.

(2) The FCA may modify the requirements in LR 10.5 to prepare a circular and to obtain shareholder approval for such a disposal, if the company:

(a) can demonstrate that it is in severe financial difficulty; and

(b) satisfies the conditions in LR 10.8.2 to LR 10.8.6.

10.8.2 The listed company should demonstrate to the FCA that it could not reasonably have entered into negotiations earlier to enable shareholder approval to be sought.

10.8.3 The following documents should be provided in writing to the FCA:

(1) confirmation from the listed company that:

(a) negotiation does not allow time for shareholder approval;

(b) all alternative methods of financing have been exhausted and the only option remaining is to dispose of a substantial part of their business;

(c) by taking the decision to dispose of part of the business to raise cash, the directors are acting in the best interests of the company and shareholders as a whole and that unless the disposal is completed receivers, administrators or liquidators are likely to be appointed; and

(d) if the disposal is to a related party, that the disposal by the company to the related party is the only available option in the current circumstances.
(2) confirmation from the company’s sponsor that, in its opinion and on the basis of information available to it, the company is in severe financial difficulty and that it will not be in a position to meet its obligations as they fall due unless the disposal takes place according to the proposed timetable;

(3) confirmation from the persons providing finance stating that further finance or facilities will not be made available and that unless the disposal is effected immediately, current facilities will be withdrawn; and

(4) an announcement that complies with LR 10.8.4 G and LR 10.8.5 G.

10.8.4 G An announcement should be notified to a RIS no later than the date the terms of the disposal are agreed and should contain:

(1) all relevant information required to be notified under LR 10.4.1 R;

(2) the name of the acquirer and the expected date of completion of the disposal;

(3) full disclosure about the continuing group’s prospects for at least the current financial year;

(4) a statement that the directors believe that the disposal is in the best interests of the company and shareholders as a whole. The directors should also state that if the disposal is not completed the company will be unable to meet its financial commitments as they fall due and consequently will be unable to continue to trade resulting in the appointment of receivers, liquidators or administrators;

(5) a statement incorporating the details of all the confirmations provided to the FCA in LR 10.8.3 G;

(6) details of any financing arrangements (either current or future) if they are contingent upon the disposal being effected;

(7) if the disposal is to a related party, then a statement as set out in LR 13.6.1R(5) must be given;

(8) a statement by the listed company that in its opinion the working capital available to the continuing group is sufficient for the group’s present requirements, that is, for at least 12 months from the date of the announcement, or, if not, how it is proposed to provide the additional working capital thought by the company to be necessary.

10.8.5 G The announcement should contain any further information that the company and its sponsors consider necessary. This should incorporate historical price sensitive information, which has already been published in relation to the disposal along with any further information required to be disclosed under articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

10.8.6 G (1) The FCA will wish to examine the documents referred to in LR 10.8.3 G (including the RIS announcement) before it grants the modification and before the announcement is released.
(2) The documents should ordinarily be lodged with the FCA:

(a) in draft form at least five clear *business days* before the terms of the transaction are agreed; and

(b) in final form on the day on which approval is sought.

10.8.7 In relation to the listed company's financial position, articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation continue to apply while the company is seeking a modification.

10.8.8 The directors should also consider whether the listed company's financial situation is such that they should request the suspension of its listing pending publication of an announcement and clarification of its financial position.

**Joint ventures**

10.8.9 (1) When a listed company enters into a joint venture it should consider how this chapter applies.

(2) It is common, when entering into a joint venture, for the partners to include exit provisions in the terms of the agreement. These typically give each partner a combination of rights and obligations to either sell their own holding or to acquire their partner’s holding should certain triggering events occur.

(3) If the listed company does not retain sole discretion over the event which requires them to either purchase the joint venture partner’s stake or to sell their own, LR 10.1.3R (2) requires this obligation to be classified at the time it is agreed as though it had been exercised at that time. Further, if the consideration to be paid is to be determined by reference to the future profitability of the joint venture or an independent valuation at the time of exercise, this consideration will be treated as being uncapped. If this is the case, the initial agreement will be classified in accordance with LR 10 Annex 1 SR (3) and (3A) at the time it is entered into.

(4) If the listed company does retain sole discretion over the triggering event, or if the listed company is making a choice to purchase or sell following an event which has been triggered by the joint venture partner, the purchase or sale must be classified when this discretion is exercised or when the choice to purchase or sell is made.

(5) Where an issuer enters into a joint venture exit arrangement which takes the form of a put or call option and exercise of the option is solely at the discretion of the other party to the arrangement, the transaction should be classified at the time it is agreed as though the option had been exercised at that time.
The Class Tests

Class tests
1G  This Annex sets out the following class tests:
(1)  the gross assets test;
(2)  the profits test;
(3)  the consideration test; and
(4)  the gross capital test.

The Gross Assets test
2R  (1) The assets test is calculated by dividing the gross assets the subject of the transaction by the gross assets of the listed company.
(2) The gross assets of the listed company means the total non-current assets, plus the total current assets, of the listed company.
(3) For:
   (a) an acquisition of an interest in an undertaking which will result in consolidation of the assets of that undertaking in the accounts of the listed company; or
   (b) a disposal of an interest in an undertaking which will result in the assets of that undertaking no longer being consolidated in the accounts of the listed company;
the gross assets the subject of the transaction means the value of 100% of that undertaking's assets irrespective of what interest is acquired or disposed of.
(4) For an acquisition or disposal of an interest in an undertaking which does not fall within paragraph (3), the gross assets the subject of the transaction means:
   (a) for an acquisition, the consideration together with liabilities assumed (if any); and
   (b) for a disposal, the assets attributed to that interest in the listed company's accounts.
(5) If there is an acquisition of assets other than an interest in an undertaking, the assets the subject of the transaction means the consideration or, if greater, the book value of those assets as they will be included in the listed company's balance sheet.
(6) If there is a disposal of assets other than an interest in an undertaking, the assets the subject of the transaction means the book value of the assets in the listed company's balance sheet.

3G  The FCA may modify paragraph 2R to require, when calculating the assets the subject of the transaction, the inclusion of further amounts if contingent assets or arrangements referred to in LR 10.2.4 R (indemnities and similar arrangements) are involved.

The Profits test
4R  (1) The profits test is calculated by dividing the profits attributable to the assets the subject of the transaction by the profits of the listed company.
(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), profits means:
(a) profits after deducting all charges except taxation; and
(b) for an acquisition or disposal of an interest in an undertaking referred to in paragraph 2R (3)(a) or (b) of this Annex, 100% of the profits of the undertaking (irrespective of what interest is acquired or disposed of).

(3) If the acquisition or disposal of the interest will not result in consolidation or deconsolidation of the target then the profits test is not applicable.

4AG The amount of loss is relevant in calculating the impact of a proposed transaction under the profits test. A listed company should include the amount of the losses of the listed company or target i.e. disregard the negative when calculating the test.

The Consideration test

5R (1) The consideration test is calculated by taking the consideration for the transaction as a percentage of the aggregate market value of all the ordinary shares (excluding treasury shares) of the listed company.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1):
(a) the consideration is the amount paid to the contracting party;
(b) if all or part of the consideration is in the form of securities to be traded on a market, the consideration attributable to those securities is the aggregate market value of those securities; and
(c) if deferred consideration is or may be payable or receivable by the listed company in the future, the consideration is the maximum total consideration payable or receivable under the agreement.

(3) If the total consideration is not subject to any maximum (and the other class tests indicate the transaction to be a class 2 transaction) the transaction is to be treated as a class 1 transaction.

(3A) If the total consideration is not subject to any maximum (and the other class tests indicate the transaction to be a transaction where all percentage ratios are less than 5%) the transaction is to be treated as a class 2 transaction.

(4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b), the figures used to determine consideration consisting of:
(a) securities of a class already listed, must be the aggregate market value of all those securities on the last business day before the announcement; and
(b) a new class of securities for which an application for listing will be made, must be the expected aggregate market value of all those securities.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (1), the figure used to determine market capitalisation is the aggregate market value of all the ordinary shares (excluding treasury shares) of the listed company at the close of business on the last business day before the announcement.

6G The FCA may modify paragraph 5R to require the inclusion of further amounts in the calculation of the consideration. For example, if the purchaser agrees to discharge any liabilities, including the repayment of inter-company or third party debt, whether actual or contingent, as part of the terms of the transaction.

The Gross Capital test

7R (1) The gross capital test is calculated by dividing the gross capital of the company or business being acquired by the gross capital of the listed company.

(2) The test in paragraph (1) is only to be applied for an acquisition of a company or business.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (1), the gross capital of the company or business being acquired means the aggregate of:
(a) the consideration (as calculated under paragraph 5R of this Annex);
(b) if a company, any of its shares and debt securities which are not being acquired;
(c) all other liabilities (other than current liabilities) including for this purpose minority interests and deferred taxation; and
(d) any excess of current liabilities over current assets.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (1), the gross capital of the listed company means the aggregate of:
(a) the market value of its shares (excluding treasury shares) and the issue amount of the debt security;
(b) all other liabilities (other than current liabilities) including for this purpose minority interests and deferred taxation; and
(c) any excess of current liabilities over current assets.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (1):
(a) figures used must be, for shares and debt security aggregated for the purposes of the gross capital percentage ratio, the aggregate market value of all those shares (or if not available before the announcement, their nominal value) and the issue amount of the debt security; and
(b) for shares and debt security aggregated for the purposes of paragraph (3)(b), any treasury shares held by the company are not to be taken into account.

Figures used to classify assets and profits

8R (1) For the purposes of calculating the tests in this Annex, except as otherwise stated in paragraphs (2) to (6), figures used to classify assets and profits, must be the figures shown in the latest published audited consolidated accounts or, if a listed company has, or will have, published a preliminary statement of later annual results at the time the terms of a transaction are agreed, the figures shown in that preliminary statement.

(2) If a balance sheet has been published in a subsequently published interim statement then gross assets and gross capital should be taken from the balance sheet published in the interim statement.

(3) (a) The figures of the listed company must be adjusted to take account of transactions completed during the period to which the figures referred to in (1) or (2) relate, and subsequent completed transactions which have been notified to a RIS under LR 10.4 or LR 10.5.
(b) The figures of the target company or business must be adjusted to take account of transactions completed during the period to which the figures referred to in (1) or (2) relate, and subsequent completed transactions which would have been a class 2 transaction or greater when classified against the target as a whole.

(4) Figures on which the auditors are unable to report without modification must be disregarded.

(5) When applying the percentage ratios to an acquisition by a company whose assets consist wholly or predominantly of cash or short-dated securities, the cash and short-dated securities must be excluded in calculating its assets and market capitalisation.

(6) The principles in this paragraph also apply (to the extent relevant) to calculating the assets and profits of the target company or business.

9G The FCA may modify paragraph 8R(4) in appropriate cases to permit figures to be taken into account.

Anomalous results
10G If a calculation under any of the class tests produces an anomalous result or if a calculation is inappropriate to the activities of the listed company, the FCA may modify the relevant rule to substitute other relevant indicators of size, including industry specific tests.

**Adjustments to figures**

11G Where a listed company wishes to make adjustments to the figures used in calculating the class tests pursuant to 10G they should discuss this with the FCA before the class tests crystallise.

**The Profits Test: Anomalous Results**

12R Paragraph 13R applies to a company that has a premium listing where:

(1) the calculation under the profits test produces a percentage ratio of 25% or more and this result is anomalous; and

(2) the transaction is not a related party transaction.

13R A company that has a premium listing may:

(1) where each of the other applicable percentage ratios are less than 5%, disregard the profits test for the purposes of classifying the transaction; or

(2) make the following adjustments to the calculation under the profits test:

(a) where any of the following costs are genuinely one-off costs, the figures used to classify profits of the listed company, or the target company or business, may be adjusted for:

   (i) costs incurred by the listed company, or target company or business, in connection with the listed company, or target company or business’ initial public offering; or

   (ii) closure costs incurred by the listed company, or target company or business, that are not part of an on-going restructuring that will occur over more than one financial period;

(b) where a listed company, or target company or business, has completed an initial public offering, the figures used to classify profits of the listed company, or target company or business, may be adjusted for interest charges incurred under private ownership prior to completion of the initial public offering provided that these interest charges:

   (i) have been incurred under facilities that were repaid as part of the initial public offering capital restructuring; and

   (ii) are substituted in the calculation of the profits test with the interest charges that would have been incurred under the new facilities for the relevant period.

14G Any adjustments made in accordance with paragraph 13R(2) should be applied equally to both the listed company, and target company or business, where applicable, to ensure a like-for-like comparison is being undertaken.

15G A company that has a premium listing does not have to consult the FCA in accordance with paragraph 10G or 11G before relying on paragraph 13R.
Chapter 11

Related party transactions: Premium listing
11.1 Related party transactions

Application

11.1 R
This chapter applies to a company that has a premium listing.

11.1.1A R
Where a company has a premium listing and:

(1) it is not in compliance with:
   (a) the provisions in LR 9.2.2AR (2)(a); or
   (b) LR 9.2.2G R; or

(2) it becomes aware that a controlling shareholder or any of its associates is not in compliance with an undertaking in LR 6.5.4R or LR 9.2.2AR (2)(a);

(3) it becomes aware that a procurement obligation (as set out in LR 6.5.5R(2)(a) or LR 9.2.2BR (2)(a) contained in an agreement entered into under LR 6.5.4R or LR 9.2.2AR (2)(a) has not been complied with by a controlling shareholder; or

(4) an independent director declines to support a statement made under LR 9.8.4R (14)(a) or LR 9.8.4R (14)(c);

LR 11.1.1C R applies.

11.1.1B G
In exceptional circumstances, the FCA may consider dispensing with or modifying the application of LR 11.1.1A R, in accordance with LR 1.2.1 R.

11.1.1C R
The company cannot rely on any of the following provisions in relation to a transaction or arrangement with or for the benefit of the relevant controlling shareholder or any associate of that controlling shareholder:

(1) the concessions specified in LR 11.1.5R (1), LR 11.1.5R (2) and LR 11.1.5R (3) in relation to transactions or arrangements in the ordinary course of business;

(2) LR 11.1.6 R; and

(3) LR 11.1.10 R.
11.1.1D If the FCA considers that it would be appropriate to do so, the FCA may dispense with or modify the application of LR 11.1.1CR (1), in accordance with LR 1.2.1 R.

11.1.1E Where a company that has a premium listing has been subject to the provisions of LR 11.1.1A R, LR 11.1.1C R will continue to apply to the company until the publication of an annual financial report which:

(1) contains the statements required under LR 9.8.4R (14)(a) and LR 9.8.4R (14)(c); and

(2) does not contain a statement made under LR 9.8.4A R.

Purpose

11.1.2 (1) This chapter sets out safeguards that apply to:

(a) transactions and arrangements between a listed company and a related party; and

(b) transactions and arrangements between a listed company and any other person that may benefit a related party.

(2) The safeguards are intended to prevent a related party from taking advantage of its position and also to prevent any perception that it may have done so.

Transaction

11.1.3 A reference in this chapter:

(1) to a transaction or arrangement by a listed company includes a transaction or arrangement by its subsidiary undertaking; and

(2) to a transaction or arrangement is, unless the contrary intention appears, a reference to the entering into of the agreement for the transaction or the entering into of the arrangement.

Definition of “related party”

11.1.4 In LR, a *related party* means:

(1) a person who is (or was within the 12 months before the date of the transaction or arrangement) a substantial shareholder; or

(2) a person who is (or was within the 12 months before the date of the transaction or arrangement) a director or shadow director of the listed company or of any other company which is (and, if he has ceased to be such, was while he was a director or shadow director of such other company) its subsidiary undertaking or parent undertaking or a fellow subsidiary undertaking of its parent undertaking; or

(3) [deleted]
(4) a person exercising significant influence; or

(5) an associate of a related party referred to in paragraph (1), (2) or (4).

**Definition of “substantial shareholder”**

In LR, a "substantial shareholder" means any person who is entitled to exercise, or to control the exercise of, 10% or more of the votes able to be cast on all or substantially all matters at general meetings of the company (or of any company which is its subsidiary undertaking or parent undertaking or of a fellow subsidiary undertaking of its parent undertaking). For the purposes of calculating voting rights, the following voting rights are to be disregarded:

(1) any voting rights which such a person exercises (or controls the exercise of) independently in its capacity as bare trustee, investment manager, collective investment undertaking or a long-term insurer in respect of its linked long-term business if no associate of that person interferes by giving direct or indirect instructions, or in any other way, in the exercise of such voting rights (except to the extent any such person confers or collaborates with such an associate which also acts in its capacity as investment manager, collective investment undertaking or long-term insurer); or

(2) any voting rights which a person may hold (or control the exercise of) solely in relation to the direct performance, by way of business, of:

(a) underwriting the issue or sale of securities; or

(b) placing securities, where the person provides a firm commitment to acquire any securities which it does not place; or

(c) acquiring securities from existing shareholders or the issuer pursuant to an agreement to procure third-party purchases of securities;

and where the conditions in (i) to (iv) are satisfied:

(i) the activities set out in (2)(a) to (c) are performed in the ordinary course of business;

(ii) the securities to which the voting rights attach are held for a consecutive period of 5 trading days or less, beginning with the first trading day on which the securities are held;

(iii) the voting rights are not exercised within the period the securities are held; and

(iv) no attempt is made directly or indirectly by the firm to intervene in (or attempt to intervene in) or exert (or attempt to exert) influence on the management of the issuer within the period the securities are held.

**Definition of “related party transaction”**

In LR, a "related party transaction" means:

(1) a transaction (other than a transaction in the ordinary course of business) between a listed company and a related party; or
(2) an arrangement (other than an arrangement in the ordinary course of business) pursuant to which a listed company and a related party each invests in, or provides finance to, another undertaking or asset; or

(3) any other similar transaction or arrangement (other than a transaction in the ordinary course of business) between a listed company and any other person the purpose and effect of which is to benefit a related party.

In assessing whether a transaction is in the ordinary course of business under this chapter, the FCA will have regard to the size and incidence of the transaction and also whether the terms and conditions of the transaction are unusual.

Transactions to which this chapter does not apply

11.6 R LR 11.7 R to LR 11.10 R do not apply to a related party transaction if it is a transaction or arrangement:

(1) of a kind referred to in paragraph 1 or 1A of LR 11 Annex 1 (a small transaction or a transaction the terms of which were agreed before a person became a related party); or

(2) of a kind referred to in paragraphs 2 to 9 of LR 11 Annex 1 and does not have any unusual features.

Note: If an issuer is proposing to enter into a transaction that could be a related party transaction it is required under LR 8 to obtain the guidance of a sponsor to assess the potential application of LR 11.

Requirements for related party transactions

11.7 R If a listed company enters into a related party transaction, the listed company must:

(1) make a notification in accordance with LR 10.4.1 R (Notification of class 2 transactions) that contains the details required by that rule and also:
   (a) the name of the related party; and
   (b) details of the nature and extent of the related party’s interest in the transaction or arrangement;

(2) send a circular to its shareholders containing the information required by LR 13.3 and LR 13.6;

(3) obtain the approval of its shareholders for the transaction or arrangement either:
   (a) before it is entered into; or
   (b) if the transaction or arrangement is expressed to be conditional on that approval, before it is completed; and

(4) ensure that the related party:
(a) does not vote on the relevant resolution; and
(b) takes all reasonable steps to ensure that the related party’s associates do not vote on the relevant resolution.

11.1.7A

If, after obtaining shareholder approval but before the completion of a related party transaction, there is a material change to the terms of the transaction, the listed company must comply again separately with LR 11.1.7 R in relation to the transaction.

11.1.7B

The FCA would (amongst other things) generally consider an increase of 10% or more in the consideration payable to be a material change to the terms of the transaction.

11.1.7C

A listed company must comply with LR 10.5.4 R in relation to a related party transaction.

11.1.8

If a meeting of the listed company has been called to approve a transaction or arrangement and, after the date of the notice of meeting but before the meeting itself, a party to that transaction or arrangement has become a related party, then to comply with LR 11.1.7 R the listed company should:

(1) ensure that the related party concerned does not vote on the relevant resolution and that the related party takes all reasonable steps to ensure that its associates do not vote on the relevant resolution; and

(2) send a further circular, for receipt by shareholders at least one clear business day before the last time for lodging proxies for the meeting, containing any information required by LR 13.3 (Contents of all circulars) and LR 13.6 (Related party circulars) that was not contained in the original circular with the notice of meeting.

11.1.9

LR 11.1.7 R and LR 11.1.8 G will apply to the variation or novation of an existing agreement between the listed company and a related party whether or not, at the time the original agreement was entered into, that party was a related party.

Modified requirements for smaller related party transactions

11.1.10

(1) This rule applies to a related party transaction if each of the percentage ratios is less than 5%, but one or more of the percentage ratios exceeds 0.25%.

(2) Where this rule applies, LR 11.1.7 R does not apply but instead the listed company must:

(a) [deleted]

(b) before entering into the transaction or arrangement, obtain written confirmation from a sponsor that the terms of the proposed transaction or arrangement with the related party are fair and reasonable as far as the shareholders of the listed company are concerned; and
(c) as soon as possible upon entering into the transaction or arrangement, make an RIS announcement which sets out:

(i) the identity of the related party;
(ii) the value of the consideration for the transaction or arrangement;
(iii) a brief description of the transaction or arrangement;
(iv) the fact that the transaction or arrangement fell within LR 11.1.10 R; and
(v) any other relevant circumstances.

**Aggregation of transactions in any 12 month period**

11.1.11

(1) If a listed company enters into transactions or arrangements with the same related party (and any of its associates) in any 12 month period and the transactions or arrangements have not been approved by shareholders the transactions or arrangements, including transactions or arrangements falling under LR 11.1.10 R, or small related party transactions under LR 11 Annex 1.1R (1), must be aggregated.

(2) If any percentage ratio is 5% or more for the aggregated transactions or arrangements, the listed company must comply with LR 11.1.7 R in respect of the latest transaction or arrangement.

**Note:** LR 13.6.1R (8) requires details of each of the transactions or arrangements being aggregated to be included in the circular.

(3) If transactions or arrangements that are small transactions under LR 11 Annex 1 paragraph 1 are aggregated under paragraph (1) of this rule and for the aggregated small transactions each of the percentage ratios is less than 5%, but one or more of the percentage ratios exceeds 0.25%, the listed company must comply with:

(a) LR 11.1.10R (2)(b) in respect of the latest small transaction; and
(b) LR 11.1.10R (2)(c) in respect of the aggregated small transactions.
### Transcripts to which related party transaction rules do not apply

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Small transaction</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>A transaction or arrangement where each of the applicable <em>percentage ratios</em> is equal to or less than 0.25%.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transaction agreed before person became a related party</td>
<td>1A</td>
<td>A transaction the terms of which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>were agreed at a time when no party to the transaction or person who was to receive the benefit of the transaction was a related party; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>have not been amended, or required the exercise of discretion by the listed company under those terms, since the party or person become a related party.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Issue of new securities and sale of treasury shares</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>A transaction that consists of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>the take up by a related party of new securities or treasury shares under its entitlement in a pre-emptive offering;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>an issue of new securities made under the exercise of conversion or subscription rights attaching to a listed class of securities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employees’ share schemes and long-term incentive schemes</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>The:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>receipt of any asset (including cash or securities of the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings) by a director of the listed company, its parent undertaking or any of its subsidiary undertakings; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>grant of an option or other right to a director of the listed company, its parent undertaking, or any of its subsidiary undertakings to acquire (whether or not for consideration) any asset (including cash or new or existing securities of the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings); or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>provision of a gift or loan to the trustees of an employee benefit trust to finance the provision of assets as referred to in (1) or (2);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in accordance with the terms of an employees’ share scheme or a long-term incentive scheme.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>A grant of credit (including the lending of money or the guaranteeing of a loan):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>to the related party on normal commercial terms;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>to a director for an amount and on terms no more favourable than those offered to employees of the group generally; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>by the related party on normal commercial terms and on an unsecured basis.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Directors’ indemnities and loans
A transaction that consists of:

(a) granting an indemnity to a director of the listed company (or any of its subsidiary undertakings) if the terms of the indemnity are in accordance with those specifically permitted to be given to a director under the Companies Act 2006;

(b) maintaining a contract of insurance if the insurance is in accordance with that specifically permitted to be maintained for a director under the Companies Act 2006 (whether for a director of the listed company or for a director of any of its subsidiary undertakings); or

(c) a loan or assistance to a director by a listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings if the terms of the loan or assistance are in accordance with those specifically permitted to be given to a director under section 204, 205 or 206 of the Companies Act 2006.

(2) Paragraph (1) applies to a listed company that is not subject to the Companies Act 2006 if the terms of the indemnity or contract of insurance are in accordance with those that would be specifically permitted under that Act (if it applied).

Underwriting

6 (1) The underwriting by a related party of all or part of an issue of securities by the listed company (or any of its subsidiary undertakings) if the consideration to be paid by the listed company (or any of its subsidiary undertakings) for the underwriting:

(a) is no more than the usual commercial underwriting consideration; and

(b) is the same as that to be paid to the other underwriters (if any).

(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to the extent that a related party is underwriting securities which it is entitled to take up under an issue of securities.

Joint investment arrangements

8 (1) An arrangement where a listed company, or any of its subsidiary undertakings, and a related party each invests in, or provides finance to, another undertaking or asset if the following conditions are satisfied:

(a) the amount invested, or provided, by the related party is not more than 25% of the amount invested, or provided, by the listed company or its subsidiary undertaking (as the case may be) and the listed company has advised the FCA in writing that this condition has been met; and

(b) a sponsor has provided a written opinion to the FCA stating that the terms and circumstances of the investment or provision of finance by the listed company or its subsidiary undertakings (as the case may be) are no less favourable than those applying to the investment or provision of finance by the related party.

(2) The advice in paragraph (1)(a) and the opinion in paragraph (1)(b) must be provided before the investment is made or the finance is provided.

Insignificant subsidiary undertaking

9 (1) A transaction or arrangement where each of the conditions in paragraphs (2) to (6) (as far as applicable) is satisfied.

(2) The party to the transaction or arrangement is only a related party because:

(a) it is (or was within the 12 months before the date of the transaction or arrangement) a substantial shareholder or its associate; or
(b) it is a **person** who is (or was within the 12 months before the date of the transaction or arrangement) a **director** or **shadow director** or his associate;

of a **subsidiary undertaking or subsidiary undertakings** of the **listed company** that has, or if there is more than one **subsidiary undertaking** that have in aggregate, contributed less than 10% of the profits of, and represented less than 10% of the assets of, the **listed company** for the relevant period.

(3) The **subsidiary undertaking or each of the subsidiary undertakings** (as the case may be) have been in the **listed company's group** for one full financial year or more.

(4) In paragraph (2), "relevant period" means:

   (a) if the **subsidiary undertaking or each of the subsidiary undertakings** (as the case may be) has been consolidated in the **listed company's group** for one full financial year or more but less than three full financial years, each of the full financial years before the date of the transaction or arrangement for which accounts have been published; and

   (b) if the **subsidiary undertaking or any of the subsidiary undertakings** (as the case may be) has been consolidated in the **listed company's group** for three full financial year or more, each of the three full financial years before the date of the transaction or arrangement for which accounts have been published.

(5) If the **subsidiary undertaking or any of the subsidiary undertakings** (as the case may be) are themselves party to the transaction or arrangement or if securities in the **subsidiary undertaking or any of the subsidiary undertakings** or their assets are the subject of the transaction or arrangement, then the ratio of consideration to market capitalisation of the **listed company** is less than 10%.

(6) In this **rule**, the figures to be used to calculate profits, assets and consideration to market capitalisation are the same as those used to classify profits, assets and consideration to market capitalisation in **LR 10 Annex 1** (as modified or added to by LR 10.7 where applicable).
Chapter 12

Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing
LR 12 : Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing

12.1 Application

This chapter applies to a company that has a premium listing.

This chapter contains rules applicable to a listed company that:

1. purchases its own equity shares; or
2. purchases its own securities other than equity shares; or
3. sells or transfers treasury shares; or
4. [deleted]
5. purchases its own securities from a related party.

Exceptions

LR 12.2 to LR 12.5 do not apply to a transaction entered into:

1. in the ordinary course of business by a securities dealing business; or
2. on behalf of third parties either by the company or any member of its group;

if the listed company has established and maintains effective Chinese walls between those responsible for any decision relating to the transaction and those in possession of inside information relating to the listed company.
12.2 Prohibition on purchase of own securities

12.2.1 [deleted]
12.3 Purchase from a related party

12.3.1 Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party, whether directly or through intermediaries, LR 11 (Related party transactions) must be complied with unless:

(1) a tender offer is made to all holders of the class of securities; or

(2) in the case of a market purchase pursuant to a general authority granted by shareholders, it is made without prior understanding, arrangement or agreement between the listed company and any related party.

12.3.2 Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, the modifications to LR 11 (Related party transactions) in LR 21.5 (Transactions with related parties: Equity shares) and LR 21.10 (Transactions with related parties: Certificates representing shares) do not apply for the purposes of LR 12.3.1R.
12.4 Purchase of own equity shares

Purchases of less than 15%

12.4.1 Unless a tender offer is made to all holders of the class, purchases by a listed company of less than 15% of any class of its equity shares (excluding treasury shares) pursuant to a general authority granted by shareholders, may only be made if the price to be paid is not more than the higher of:

1. 5% above the average market value of the company’s equity shares for the 5 business days prior to the day the purchase is made; and
2. that stipulated by article 5(6) of the Market Abuse Regulation.

Purchases of 15% or more

12.4.2 Purchases by a listed company of 15% or more of any class of its equity shares (excluding treasury shares) pursuant to a general authority by the shareholders must be by way of a tender offer to all shareholders of that class.

12.4.2A Purchases of 15% or more of any class of its own equity shares may be made by a listed company, other than by way of a tender offer, provided that the full terms of the share buyback have been specifically approved by shareholders.

12.4.3 Where a series of purchases are made pursuant to a general authority granted by shareholders, which in aggregate amount to 15% or more of the number of equity shares of the relevant class in issue immediately following the shareholders meeting at which the general authority to purchase was granted, a tender offer need only be made in respect of any purchase that takes the aggregate to or above that level. Purchases that have been specifically approved by shareholders are not to be taken into account in determining whether the 15% level has been reached.

Notification prior to purchase

12.4.4 (1) Any decision by the board to submit to shareholders a proposal for the listed company to be authorised to purchase its own equity shares must be notified to a RIS as soon as possible.

(2) A notification required by paragraph (1) must set out whether the proposal relates to:
Section 12.4: Purchase of own equity shares

12.4.5 A listed company must notify a RIS as soon as possible of the outcome of the shareholders' meeting to decide the proposal described in 12.4.4 R.

Notification of purchases

12.4.6 Any purchase of a listed company's own equity shares by or on behalf of the company or any other member of its group must be notified to a RIS as soon as possible, and in any event by no later than 7:30 a.m. on the business day following the calendar day on which the purchase occurred. The notification must include:

1. the date of purchase;
2. the number of equity shares purchased;
3. the purchase price for each of the highest and lowest price paid, where relevant;
4. the number of equity shares purchased for cancellation and the number of equity shares purchased to be held as treasury shares; and
5. where equity shares were purchased to be held as treasury shares, a statement of:
   a. the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the purchase and non-cancellation of such equity shares; and
   b. the number of equity shares of each class that the company has in issue less the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the purchase and non-cancellation of such equity shares.

Consent of other classes

12.4.7 Unless 12.4.8 R applies, a company with listed securities convertible into, or exchangeable for, or carrying a right to subscribe for equity shares of the class proposed to be purchased must (prior to entering into any agreement to purchase such shares):

1. convene a separate meeting of the holders of those securities; and
2. obtain their approval for the proposed purchase of equity shares by a special resolution.
12.4.8  R  LR 12.4.7 R does not apply if the trust deed or terms of issue of the relevant securities authorise the listed company to purchase its own equity shares.

12.4.9  R  A circular convening a meeting required by LR 12.4.7 R must include (in addition to the information in LR 13 (Contents of circulars)):

(1) a statement of the effect on the conversion expectations of holders in terms of attributable assets and earnings, on the basis that the company exercises the authority to purchase its equity shares in full at the maximum price allowed (where the price is to be determined by reference to a future market price the calculation must be made on the basis of market prices prevailing immediately prior to the publication of the circular and that basis must be disclosed); and

(2) any adjustments to the rights of the holders which the company may propose (in such a case, the information required under paragraph (1) must be restated on the revised basis).

Other similar transactions

12.4.10  G  A listed company intending to enter into a transaction that would have an effect on the company similar to that of a purchase of own equity shares should consult with the FCA to discuss the application of LR 12.4.
12.5 Purchase of own securities other than equity shares

12.5.1 Except where the purchases will consist of individual transactions made in accordance with the terms of issue of the relevant securities, where a listed company intends to purchase any of its securities convertible into its equity shares with a premium listing it must:

(1) ensure that no dealings in the relevant securities are carried out by or on behalf of the company or any member of its group until the proposal has either been notified to a RIS or abandoned; and

(2) notify a RIS of its decision to purchase.

Notification of purchases, early redemptions and cancellations

12.5.2 Any purchases, early redemptions or cancellations of a company’s own securities convertible into equity shares with a premium listing, by or on behalf of the company or any other member of its group must be notified to a RIS when an aggregate of 10% of the initial amount of the relevant class of securities has been purchased, redeemed or cancelled, and for each 5% in aggregate of the initial amount of that class acquired thereafter.

The notification required by 12.5.2 R must be made as soon as possible and in any event no later than 7:30 a.m. on the business day following the calendar day on which the relevant threshold is reached or exceeded. The notification must state:

(1) the amount of securities acquired, redeemed or cancelled since the last notification; and

(2) whether or not the securities are to be cancelled and the number of that class of securities that remain outstanding.

12.5.4 [deleted]

Period between purchase and notification

12.5.5 In circumstances where the purchase is not being made pursuant to a tender offer and the purchase causes a relevant threshold in 12.5.2 R to be reached or exceeded, no further purchases may be undertaken until after a notification has been made in accordance with 12.5.2 R to 12.5.4 R.
Convertible securities

[deleted]

Warrants and options

Where, within a period of 12 months, a listed company purchases warrants or options over its own equity shares which, on exercise, convey the entitlement to equity shares representing 15% or more of the company's existing issued shares (excluding treasury shares), the company must send to its shareholders a circular containing the following information:

1. a statement of the directors' intentions regarding future purchases of the company's warrants and options;

2. the number and terms of the warrants or options acquired and to be acquired and the method of acquisition;

3. where warrants or options have been, or are to be, acquired from specific parties, a statement of the names of those parties and all material terms of the acquisition; and

4. details of the prices to be paid.
12.6 Treasury shares

12.6.3 If by virtue of its holding treasury shares, a listed company is allotted shares as part of a capitalisation issue, the company must notify a RIS as soon as possible and in any event by no later than 7:30 a.m. on the business day following the calendar day on which allotment occurred of the following information:

1. the date of the allotment;
2. the number of shares allotted;
3. a statement as to what number of shares allotted have been cancelled and what number is being held as treasury shares; and
4. where shares allotted are being held as treasury shares, a statement of:
   a. the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the allotment; and
(b) the number of shares of each class that the company has in issue less the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the allotment.

12.6.4

Any sale for cash, transfer for the purposes of or pursuant to an employees' share scheme or cancellation of treasury shares that represents over 0.5% of the listed company's share capital must be notified to a RIS as soon as possible and in any event by no later than 7:30 a.m. on the business day following the calendar day on which the sale, transfer or cancellation occurred. The notification must include:

(1) the date of the sale, transfer or cancellation;

(2) the number of shares sold, transferred or cancelled;

(3) the sale or transfer price for each of the highest and lowest prices paid, where relevant; and

(4) a statement of:
   (a) the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the sale, transfer or cancellation; and
   (b) the number of shares of each class that the company has in issue less the total number of treasury shares of each class held by the company following the sale, transfer or cancellation.
Chapter 13

Contents of circulars:
Premium listing
13.1 Preliminary

Application

This chapter applies to a company that has a premium listing.

Listed company to ensure circulars comply with chapter

A listed company must ensure that circulars it issues to holders of its listed equity shares comply with the requirements of this chapter.

Incorporation by reference

Information may be incorporated in a circular issued by a listed company by reference to relevant information contained in:

(1) an approved prospectus or listing particulars of that listed company; or

(2) any other published document of that listed company that has been filed with the FCA.

Information incorporated by reference must be the latest available to the listed company.

Information required by LR 13.3R (1) and (2) must not be incorporated in the circular by reference to information contained in another document.

When information is incorporated by reference, a cross reference list must be provided in the circular to enable security holders to identify easily specific items of information. The cross reference list must specify where the information can be accessed by security holders.

Omission of information

The FCA may authorise the omission of information required by LR 13.3 to LR 13.6, LR 13.8 and LR 13 Annex 1, if it considers that disclosure of that information would be contrary to the public interest or seriously detrimental to the listed company, provided that that omission would not be likely to mislead the public with regard to facts and circumstances, knowledge of which is essential for the assessment of the matter covered by the circular.
13.1.8 R A request to the FCA to authorise the omission of specific information in a particular case must:

(1) be made in writing by the listed company;

(2) identify the specific information concerned and the specific reasons for the omission; and

(3) state why in the listed company's opinion one or more grounds in LR 13.1.7 apply.

### Sending information to holders of listed equity shares

13.1.9 R A supplementary circular must be sent to holders of listed equity shares no later than 7 days prior to the date of a meeting at which a vote which is expressly required under the listing rules will be taken.

13.1.10 G It may be necessary for a convened shareholder meeting to be adjourned to comply with LR 13.1.9 R.
13.2 Approval of circulars

Circulars to be approved

13.2.1 A listed company must not circulate or publish any of the following types of circular unless it has been approved by the FCA:

(1) a class 1 circular; or

(2) a related party circular; or

(3) a circular that proposes the purchase by a listed company of its own shares which is required by LR 13.7.1R (2) to include a working capital statement; or

[Note: LR 12.4.10 G]

(4) a circular that proposes a reconstruction or a refinancing of a listed company which is required by LR 9.5.12 R to include a working capital statement; or

(5) a circular that proposes a cancellation of listing which is required to be sent to shareholders under LR 5.2.5 R (1); or

(6) a circular that proposes a transfer of listing which is required to be sent to shareholders under LR 5.4A.4 R (2).

Circulars not requiring approval

13.2.2 [deleted]

13.2.2A [deleted]

13.2.3 [deleted]

Approval procedures

13.2.4 The following documents (to the extent applicable) must be lodged with the FCA in final form before it will approve a circular:

(1) a Sponsors Declaration for the Production of a Circular completed by the sponsor;
(2) for a class 1 circular or related party circular, a letter setting out any items of information required by this chapter that are not applicable in that particular case; and

(3) [deleted]

(4) any other document that the FCA has sought in advance from the listed company or its sponsor.

13.2.5 Two copies of the following documents in draft form must be submitted at least 10 clear business days before the date on which it is intended to publish the circular:

(1) the circular; and

(2) the letters and documents referred to in LR 13.2.4R (1) and (2).

13.2.6 [deleted]

13.2.7 If a circular submitted for approval is amended, two copies of amended drafts must be resubmitted, marked to show changes made to conform with FCA comments and to indicate other changes.

Approval of circulars

13.2.8 The FCA will approve a circular if it is satisfied that the requirements of this chapter are satisfied.

13.2.9 The FCA will only approve a circular between 9a.m. and 5.30p.m. on a business day (unless alternative arrangements are made in advance).

Note: LR 9.6.1 R requires a company to forward to the FCA two copies of all circulars issued (whether or not they require approval) for publication on the document viewing facility.

Sending approved circulars

13.2.10 A listed company must send a circular to holders of its listed equity shares as soon as practicable after it has been approved.
13.3 Contents of all circulars

Contents of all circulars

Every circular sent by a listed company to holders of its listed securities must:

(1) provide a clear and adequate explanation of its subject matter giving due prominence to its essential characteristics, benefits and risks;

(2) state why the security holder is being asked to vote or, if no vote is required, why the circular is being sent;

(3) if voting or other action is required, contain all information necessary to allow the security holders to make a properly informed decision;

(4) if voting or other action is required, contain a heading drawing attention to the document’s importance and advising security holders who are in any doubt as to what action to take to consult appropriate independent advisers;

(5) if voting is required, contain a recommendation from the Board as to the voting action security holders should take for all resolutions proposed, indicating whether or not the proposal described in the circular is, in the Board’s opinion, in the best interests of security holders as a whole;

(6) state that if all the securities have been sold or transferred by the addressee the circular and any other relevant documents should be passed to the person through whom the sale or transfer was effected for transmission to the purchaser or transferee;

(7) if new securities are being issued in substitution for existing securities, explain what will happen to existing documents of title;

(8) not include any reference to a specific date on which listed securities will be marked “ex” any benefit or entitlement which has not been agreed in advance with the RIE on which the company’s securities are or are to be traded;

(9) if it relates to a transaction in connection with which securities are proposed to be listed, include a statement that application has been or will be made for the securities to be admitted and, if known, a statement of the following matters:

   (a) the dates on which the securities are expected to be admitted and on which dealings are expected to commence;

   (b) how the new securities rank for dividend or interest;
(c) whether the new securities rank equally with any existing listed securities;
(d) the nature of the document of title;
(e) the proposed date of issue;
(f) the treatment of any fractions;
(g) whether or not the security may be held in uncertificated form; and
(h) the names of the RIEs on which securities are to be traded;

(10) if a person is named in the circular as having advised the listed company or its directors, a statement that the adviser has given and has not withdrawn its written consent to the inclusion of the reference to the adviser’s name in the form and context in which it is included; and

(11) if the circular relates to cancelling listing, state whether it is the company’s intention to apply to cancel the securities’ listing.

13.3.2 R If another rule provides that a circular of a particular type must include specified information, then that information is (unless the contrary intention appears) in addition to the information required under this section.

Pro forma financial information in certain circulars

13.3.3 R If a listed company includes pro forma financial information in a class 1 circular, a related party circular or a circular relating to the purchase by the company of 25% or more its issued equity shares (excluding treasury shares), it must comply with the requirements for pro forma financial information set out in the PR Regulation.
13.4 Class 1 circulars

Class 1 circulars

A class 1 circular must also include the following information:

(1) the information given in the notification (see LR 10.4.1R);
(2) the information required by LR 13 Annex 1;
(3) the information required by LR 13.5 (if applicable); and
(4) a declaration by the issuer and its directors in the following form (with appropriate modifications):

"The [issuer] and the directors of [the issuer], whose names appear on page [], accept responsibility for the information contained in this document. To the best of the knowledge and belief of the [issuer] and the directors (who have taken all reasonable care to ensure that such is the case) the information contained in this document is in accordance with the facts and does not omit anything likely to affect the import of such information.";

(5) a statement of the effect of the acquisition or disposal on the group’s earnings and assets and liabilities; and
(6) if a statement or report attributed to a person as an expert is included in a circular (other than a statement or report incorporated by reference from a prospectus or listing particulars), a statement to the effect that the statement or report is included, in the form and context in which it is included, with the person’s consent.

The information necessary under LR 13.3.1R (3) includes all the material terms of the class 1 transaction including the consideration.

If a class 1 circular contains a modified report, as described in LR 13.5.25 R, the class 1 circular must set out:

(1) whether the modification or emphasis-of-matter paragraph is significant to shareholders;
(2) if the modification or emphasis-of-matter paragraph is significant to shareholders, the reason for its significance; and
(3) a statement from the directors explaining why they are able to recommend the proposal set out in the class 1 circular notwithstanding the modified report

Takeover offers

13.4.3

(1) If a class 1 circular relates to a takeover offer which is recommended by the offeree’s board and the listed company has had access to due diligence information on the offeree at the time the class 1 circular is published, the listed company must prepare and publish the working capital statement on the basis that the acquisition has taken place.

(2) If a class 1 circular relates to a takeover offer which has not been recommended by the offeree’s board or the listed company has not had access to due diligence information on the offeree at the time the class 1 circular is published, then the listed company must comply with paragraphs (3) to (6).

(3) The listed company must prepare and publish the working capital statement on the listed company on the basis that the acquisition has not taken place.

(4) Other information on the offeree required by LR 13 Annex 1 should be disclosed in the class 1 circular on the basis of information published or made available by the offeree and of which the listed company is aware and is free to disclose.

(5) [deleted]

(6) If the takeover offer has been recommended but the listed company does not have access to due diligence information on the offeree, the listed company must disclose in the class 1 circular why access has not been given to that information.

Acquisition or disposal of property

If a class 1 transaction relates to:

13.4.4

(1) the acquisition or disposal of property; or

(2) the acquisition of a property company that is not listed;

the class 1 circular must include a property valuation report.

13.4.5

If a listed company makes significant reference to the value of a property in a class 1 circular, the class 1 circular must include a property valuation report.

Acquisition or disposal of mineral resources

If a class 1 transaction relates to an acquisition or disposal of mineral resources or rights to mineral resources the class 1 circular must include:

13.4.6

(1) a mineral expert’s report; and

(2) a glossary of the technical terms used in the mineral expert’s report.
The FCA may modify the information requirements in LR 13.4.6 R if it considers that the information set out would not provide significant additional information. In those circumstances the FCA would generally require only the following information, provided it is presented in accordance with reporting standards acceptable to the FCA:

1. details of mineral resources, and where applicable reserves (presented separately) and exploration results or prospects;
2. anticipated mine life and exploration potential or similar duration of commercial activity in extracting reserves;
3. an indication of the duration and main terms of any licences or concessions and the legal, economic and environmental conditions for exploring and developing those licences or concessions;
4. indications of the current and anticipated progress of mineral exploration and/or extraction and processing including a discussion of the accessibility of the deposit; and
5. an explanation of any exceptional factors that have influenced the matters in (1) to (4).

**Acquisition of a scientific research based company or related assets**

If a class 1 transaction relates to the acquisition of a scientific research based company or related assets, the class 1 circular must contain an explanation of the transaction’s impact on the acquirer’s business plan and the information set out in Section 1c of Part III (Scientific research based companies) of the ESMA Prospectus Recommendations.
13.5 Financial information in Class 1 Circulars

When financial information must be included in a class 1 circular

13.5.1 Financial information, as set out in this section, must be included by a listed company in a class 1 circular if:

(1) the listed company is seeking to acquire an interest in a target which will result in a consolidation of the target's assets and liabilities with those of the listed company; or

(2) the listed company is seeking to dispose of an interest in a target which will result in the assets and liabilities which are the subject of the disposal no longer being consolidated; or

(3) the target ("A") has itself acquired a target ("B") and:

   (a) A acquired B within the three year reporting period set out in LR 13.5.13R (1) or after the date of the last published accounts; and

   (b) the acquisition of B, at the date of its acquisition by A, would have been classified as a class 1 acquisition in relation to the listed company at the date of acquisition of A by the listed company.

13.5.3A When a listed company is acquiring an interest in a target that will be accounted for as an investment, or disposing of an interest in a target that has been accounted for as an investment, and the target's securities that are the subject of the transaction are admitted to an investment exchange that enables intra-day price formation, the class 1 circular should include:

(1) the amounts of the dividends or other distributions paid in the last three years; and
(2) the price per security and the imputed value of the entire holding being acquired or disposed of at the close of business at the following times:

(a) on the last business day of each of the six months prior to the issue of the class 1 circular;
(b) on the day prior to the announcement of the transaction; and
(c) at the latest practicable date prior to the submission for approval of the class 1 circular.

13.5.3B  
When a listed company is acquiring or disposing of an interest in a target that was or will be accounted for using the equity method in the listed company's annual consolidated accounts, the class 1 circular should include:

(1) for an acquisition,

(a) a narrative explanation of the proposed accounting treatment of the target in the issuer's next audited consolidated accounts;
(b) a financial information table for the target;
(c) a statement that the target financial information has been audited and reported on without modification or a statement addressing LR 13.4.2 R and LR 13.5.25 R with regard to any modifications; and
(d) a reconciliation of the financial information and opinion thereon in accordance with LR 13.5.27R (2)(a) or, where applicable, a statement from the directors in accordance with LR 13.5.27R (2)(b);

(2) for a disposal, the line entries relating to the target from its last audited consolidated balance sheet and those from its audited consolidated income statement for the last three years together with the equivalent line entries from its interim consolidated balance sheet and interim consolidated income statement, where the issuer has published subsequent interim financial information.

13.5.3C  
A listed company that is entering into a class 1 transaction which falls within LR 13.5.1 R, LR 13.5.3A R or LR 13.5.3B R but cannot comply with LR 13.5.12 R (inclusion of financial information table) or, for an investment, LR 13.5.3AR (2) (inclusion of price per security and the imputed value of the entire holding), must include an appropriate independent valuation of the target in the class 1 circular.

13.5.3D  
The FCA may dispense with the requirement for an independent valuation under LR 13.5.3C R if it considers that this would not provide useful information for shareholders, in which case the class 1 circular must include such information as the FCA specifies.

Accounting policies

13.5.4  
(1) A listed company must present all financial information that is disclosed in a class 1 circular in a form that is consistent with the accounting policies adopted in its own latest annual consolidated accounts.
(2) The requirement set out in (1) does not apply when financial information is presented in accordance with:

(a) ■ DTR 4.2.6 R, in relation only to financial information for the listed company presented for periods after the end of its last published annual accounts; or

(b) ■ LR 13.3.3 R (in relation to pro forma financial information); or

(c) ■ LR 13.5.27 R or ■ LR 13.5.30 R (in relation to financial information presented for entities that are admitted to trading on a regulated market or admitted to an appropriate multilateral trading facility or overseas investment exchange); or

(d) ■ LR 13.5.30B R (in relation to financial information on disposal entities extracted from financial records from previous years); or

(e) ■ LR 13.5.3A R or ■ LR 13.5.3B R (in relation to targets that are or will be treated as investments or accounted for using the equity method in the listed company’s consolidated accounts); or

(f) the accounting policies to be used in the issuer’s next financial statements, provided the issuer’s last published annual consolidated accounts have been presented on a restated basis consistent with those to be used in its next accounts on or before the date of the class 1 circular; or

(g) ■ LR 13.5.32 R (in relation to a profit forecast or a profit estimate).

13.5.5 Accounting policies include accounting standards and accounting disclosures.

Source of information

13.5.6 A listed company must cite the source of all financial information that it discloses in a class 1 circular.

13.5.7 In complying with ■ LR 13.5.6 R a listed company should:

(1) state whether the financial information was extracted from accounts, internal financial accounting records, internal management accounting records, an external or other source;

(2) state whether financial information that was extracted from audited accounts was extracted without material adjustment; and

(3) indicate which aspects of the financial information relate to:

(a) historical financial information;

(b) forecast or estimated financial information; or

(c) pro forma financial information prepared in accordance with Annex 1 and Annex 20 of the PR Regulation;

with reference made to where the basis of presentation can be found.

13.5.8 If financial information has not been extracted directly from audited accounts, the class 1 circular must:
(1) set out the basis and assumptions on which the financial information has been prepared; and

(2) include a statement that the financial information is unaudited or not reported on by an accountant.

13.5.9  A listed company must provide investors with all necessary information to understand the context and relevance of non-statutory figures, including a reconciliation to statutory equivalents.

Synergy benefits

13.5.9A  Where a listed company includes details of estimated synergies or other quantified estimated financial benefits expected to arise from a transaction in a class 1 circular, it must also include in the class 1 circular:

(1) the basis for the belief that those synergies or other quantified estimated financial benefits will arise;

(2) an analysis and explanation of the constituent elements of the synergies or other quantified estimated financial benefits (including any costs) sufficient to enable the relative importance of those elements to be understood, including an indication of when they will be realised and whether they are expected to be recurring;

(3) a base figure for any comparison drawn;

(4) a statement that the synergies or other quantified estimated financial benefits are contingent on the class 1 transaction and could not be achieved independently; and

(5) a statement that the estimated synergies or other quantified estimated financial benefits reflect both the beneficial elements and relevant costs.

Prominence of information

13.5.10  A listed company must give audited historical financial information greater prominence in a class 1 circular than any forecast, estimated, pro forma or non-statutory financial information.

Summary of financial information

13.5.11  A listed company that provides a summary of financial information in a class 1 circular must include in the circular a statement that investors should read the whole document and not rely solely on the summarised financial information.

Financial information table

13.5.12  A listed company that is required by LR 13.5.1 R or LR 13.5.3BR (1) to produce financial information in a class 1 circular must include in the circular a financial information table.
Class 1 acquisitions

13.5.12A R

LR 13.5.13 R to LR 13.5.30 R apply only in relation to a class 1 acquisition.

Financial information table: reporting period

13.5.13 R

A financial information table for a class 1 acquisition must cover one of the following reporting periods:

1. a period of three years up to the end of the latest financial period for which the target or its parent has prepared audited accounts; or

2. a lesser period than the period set out in (1) if the target’s business has been in existence for less than three years.

Financial information table: class 1 acquisitions

13.5.14 R

A listed company must include, in a financial information table, financial information that covers:

1. the target; and

2. the target’s subsidiary undertakings, if any.

[deleted]

13.5.15 R

[deleted]

13.5.16 R

[deleted]

13.5.17 G

[deleted]

13.5.17A R

If the target has made an acquisition or a series of acquisitions that were made during, or subsequent to, the reporting periods set out in LR 13.5.13 R the listed company must include additional financial information tables so that the financial information presented by the listed company represents at least 75% of the enlarged target for the period from the commencement of the relevant three year reporting period set out in LR 13.5.13R (1) up to the date of the acquisition by the listed company or the last balance sheet date presented by it under LR LR 13.5.13R (1), whichever of the two is earlier.

13.5.17B G

For the purposes of assessing whether the financial information presented in accordance with LR 13.5.17A R represents at least 75% of the enlarged target the FCA will take into account factors such as the assets, profitability and market capitalisation of the business.

13.5.18 R

A listed company must ensure that a financial information table includes, for each of the periods covered by the table:

1. a balance sheet and its explanatory notes;

2. an income statement and its explanatory notes;
(3) a cash flow statement and its explanatory notes;
(4) a statement showing either all changes in equity or changes in equity other than those arising from capital transactions with owners and distributions to owners;
(5) the accounting policies; and
(6) any additional explanatory notes.

13.5.19 R [deleted]
13.5.20 G [deleted]

Financial information table: accountant's opinion

13.5.21 R Unless LR 13.5.3A R, LR 13.5.3B R or LR 13.5.27 R applies, a financial information table must disclose how the accounting policies used conform with LR 13.5.4 R and be accompanied by an accountant’s opinion as set out in LR 13.5.22 R.

13.5.22 R An accountant’s opinion must set out whether, for the purposes of the class 1 circular, the financial information table gives a true and fair view of the financial matters set out in it.

13.5.23 R An accountant’s opinion must be given by an independent accountant who is qualified to act as an auditor.

13.5.24 G An accountant will be independent if he or she complies with the standards and guidelines on independence issued by its national accountancy and auditing bodies.

13.5.25 R If the accountant's opinion required by LR 13.5.21 R is modified or contains an emphasis-of-matter paragraph, details of all material matters must be set out in the class 1 circular, including:

(1) all the reasons for the modification or emphasis-of-matter paragraph; and
(2) a quantification of the effects, if both relevant and practicable.

13.5.26 R If the historical financial information of a target that falls within LR 13.5.14 R or LR 13.5.17A R is subject to a modified report, details of the material matters giving rise to the modification or emphasis-of-matter paragraph must be set out in the class 1 circular.
Acquisitions of publicly traded companies

13.5.27

(1) ■ LR 13.5.27R (2) applies where the target is:

(a) admitted to trading on a regulated market; or

(b) a company whose securities are either listed on an investment exchange that is not a regulated market or admitted to a multilateral trading facility, where appropriate standards as regards the production, publication and auditing of financial information are in place;

and none of the financial information included in the target's financial information table is subject to a modified report, except where a dispensation has been granted under ■ LR 13.5.27C R.

(2) Where ■ LR 13.5.27R (1) or ■ LR 13.5.3BR (1) applies the listed company must include in the class 1 circular either:

(a) a reconciliation of financial information on the target for all periods covered by the financial information table on the basis of the listed company's accounting policies, accompanied by an accountant's opinion that sets out:

(i) whether the reconciliation of financial information in the financial information table has been properly compiled on the basis stated; and

(ii) whether the adjustments are appropriate for the purpose of presenting the financial information (as adjusted) on a basis consistent in all material respects with the listed company's accounting policies; or

(b) a statement by the directors that no material adjustment needs to be made to the target's financial information to achieve consistency with the listed company's accounting policies.

13.5.27A

The FCA will make its assessment of whether the accounting and other standards applicable to an investment exchange or multilateral trading facility as a result of securities being admitted to trading are appropriate for the purpose of ■ LR 13.5.27R (1)(b) having regard to at least the following matters in relation to the legal and regulatory framework applying to the target by virtue of its admission to that market:

(1) the quality of auditing standards compared with International Standards on Auditing;

(2) requirements for independence of auditors;

(3) the nature and extent of regulation of audit firms;

(4) the quality of accounting standards compared with International Financial Reporting Standards;

(5) the requirements for the timeliness of publication of financial information;

(6) the presence and effectiveness of monitoring of the timely production and publication of the accounts; and
(7) the existence and level of external independent scrutiny of the quality of accounts and the disclosures therein.

13.5.27B R Where a listed company proposes to rely on § LR 13.5.27R (1)(b), its sponsor must submit to the FCA an assessment of the appropriateness of the standards applicable to an investment exchange or multilateral trading facility against the factors set out in § LR 13.5.27AG (1) to § (7) and any other matters that it considers should be noted. The assessment must be submitted before or at the time the listed company submits the draft class 1 circular.

13.5.27C R The FCA may grant a dispensation from § LR 13.5.27R (1) to allow the application of § LR 13.5.27R (2) where a modified report on the target’s financial information has been produced. In such circumstances the FCA will have regard to the factors set out in § LR 6.2.5G.

13.5.28 R [deleted]

13.5.29 G [deleted]

Half-yearly and quarterly financial information

13.5.30 R If a class 1 circular includes half-yearly or quarterly or other interim financial information for the target, the financial information should be presented in accordance with § LR 13.5.4R (1) and be accompanied by a confirmation from the directors of the consistency of the accounting policies with those of the issuer, except:

(1) where § LR 13.5.27R (1) applies, the financial information should be presented in accordance with § LR 13.5.27R (2) except that no accountant’s opinion is required; or

(2) where § LR 13.5.3BR applies, the financial information should be presented in accordance with § LR 13.5.3BR (1)(b) and § LR 13.5.3BR (1)(d).

Class 1 disposals

13.5.30A R § LR 13.5.30BR to § LR 13.5.30DG apply only in relation to a class 1 disposal.

13.5.30B R (1) In the case of a class 1 disposal, a financial information table must include for the target:

(a) the last annual consolidated balance sheet;

(b) the consolidated income statements for the last three years drawn up to at least the level of profit or loss for the period; and

(c) the consolidated balance sheet and consolidated income statement (drawn up to at least the level of profit or loss for the period) at the issuer’s interim balance sheet date if the issuer has published interim financial statements since the publication of its last annual audited consolidated financial statements.
(2) The information in (1) must be extracted without material adjustment from the consolidation schedules that underlie the listed company’s audited consolidated accounts or, in the case of (c), the interim financial information, and must be accompanied by a statement to this effect.

(3) If the information in (1) is not extracted from the consolidation schedules it must be extracted from the issuer’s accounting records and where an allocation is made, the information must be accompanied by:

(a) an explanation of the basis for any financial information presented; and

(b) a statement by the directors of the listed company that such allocations provide a reasonable basis for the presentation of the financial information for the target to enable shareholders to make a fully informed voting decision.

(4) If the target has not been owned by the listed company for the entire reporting period set out in (1)(b), the information required by (1) or (3) may be extracted from the target’s accounting records.

13.5.30C Where a change of accounting policies has occurred during the period covered by the financial information table required by ■ LR 13.5.30B R the financial information must be presented on the basis of both the original and amended accounting policies for the year prior to that in which the new accounting policy is adopted unless the change did not require a restatement of the comparative. Therefore the financial information table should have four columns (or more where changes have occurred in more than one year).

13.5.30D The FCA may modify ■ LR 13.5.30BR (1)(b) and ■ (c) where it is not possible for the listed company to provide a meaningful allocation of its costs in the target’s audited consolidated income statements. The class 1 circular should contain a statement to this effect where this modification has been granted. The FCA would not normally expect to grant such modifications except in respect of non-operating costs such as finance costs and tax.

Pro forma financial information

13.5.31 ■ LR 13.3.3 R sets out requirements for pro forma information in a class 1 circular.

Profit forecasts and profit estimates

13.5.32 If a listed company includes a profit forecast or a profit estimate in a class 1 circular it must:

(1) comply with the requirements for a profit forecast or profit estimate set out in Annex 1 of the PR Regulation; and

(2) include a statement confirming that the profit forecast or profit estimate has been properly compiled on the basis of assumptions stated and that the basis of accounting is consistent with the accounting policies of the listed company.
If, prior to the *class 1 transaction*, a *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* was published that:

(1) relates to any of the *listed company*, a significant part of the *listed company group*, the *target* or a significant part of the *target*; and

(2) relates to financial information including the period of the forecast which has yet to be published at the date of the *class 1 circular*;

the *listed company* must either:

(3) include that *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* in the *class 1 circular* and comply with LR 13.5.32 R; or

(4) include the *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* in the *class 1 circular* together with an explanation of why the *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* is no longer valid and why reassessment of the *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* in the *class 1 circular* is not necessary for the *listed company* to comply fully with LR 13.3.1R (3).

For the purposes of LR 13.5.33 R, the fact that the *profit forecast* or *profit estimate* was prepared for a reason other than the *class 1 circular* does not itself indicate invalidity.

For the purposes of LR 13.5.33R (1) a significant part of the *listed company* or *target* is any part that represents over 75% of the *listed company’s group* or the *target* respectively. For these purposes the FCA will take into account factors such as the assets, profitability and market capitalisation of the business.

A *listed company* should consider LR 9.2.18 R regarding information that must be published after a *class 1 transaction*.

[deleted]

[deleted]
13.6  Related party circulars

A related party circular must also include:

(1) in all cases the following information referred to in the PR Regulation relating to the company:
   Paragraph of Annex 1 of the PR Regulation;
   (a) Annex 1 item 4.1 – Issuer name;
   (b) Annex 1 item 4.4 – Issuer address;
   (c) Annex 1 item 16.1 – Major shareholders;
   (d) Annex 1 item 18.7.1 – Significant changes in the issuer’s financial position;
   (e) Annex 1 item 20.1 – Material contracts (if it is information which shareholders of the company would reasonably require to make a properly informed assessment of how to vote);
   (f) Annex 1 item 21.1 – Documents available;

(2) for a transaction or arrangement where the related party is (or was within the 12 months before the transaction or arrangement), a director or shadow director, or an associate of a director or shadow director, of the company (or of any other company which is its subsidiary undertaking or parent undertaking or a fellow subsidiary undertaking) the following information referred to in the PR Regulation relating to that director:
   Paragraph of Annex 1 of the PR Regulation:
   (a) Annex 1 item 14.2 – Service contracts;
   (b) Annex 1 item 15.2 – Shareholdings and stock options;
   (c) Annex 1 item 17.1 – Related party transactions;

(3) full particulars of the transaction or arrangement, including the name of the related party concerned and of the nature and extent of the interest of the party in the transaction or arrangement and also a statement that the reason the security holder is being asked to vote on the transaction or arrangement is because it is with a related party;

(4) for an acquisition or disposal of an asset where any percentage ratio is 25% or more and for which appropriate financial information is not available, an independent valuation;
(5) a statement by the board that the transaction or arrangement is fair and reasonable as far as the security holders of the company are concerned and that the directors have been so advised by a sponsor;

(6) if applicable, a statement that the related party will not vote on the relevant resolution, and that the related party has undertaken to take all reasonable steps to ensure that its associates will not vote on the relevant resolution, at the meeting;

(7) [deleted]

(8) if LR 11.1.11 R (Aggregation of transactions) applies, details of each of the transactions or arrangements being aggregated; and

(9) if a statement or report attributed to a person as an expert is included in a circular (other than a statement or report incorporated by reference from a prospectus or listing particulars), a statement that it is included, in the form and context in which it is included, with the consent of that person.

For the purposes of the statement by the board referred to in LR 13.6.1R (5):

(1) any director who is, or an associate of whom is, the related party, or who is a director of the related party should not have taken part in the board’s consideration of the matter; and

(2) the statement should specify that such persons have not taken part in the board’s consideration of the matter.

For the purpose of advising the directors under LR 13.6.1R (5), a sponsor may take into account but not rely on commercial assessments of the directors.

Pro forma financial information

LR 13.3.3 R sets out requirements for pro forma information in related party circulars.
13.7    Circulars about purchase of own equity shares

Purchase of own equity shares

(1) A circular relating to a resolution proposing to give the company authority to purchase its own equity securities must also include:

(a) if the authority sought is a general one, a statement of the directors' intentions about using the authority;

(b) if known, the method by which the company intends to acquire its equity shares and the number to be acquired in that way;

(c) a statement of whether the company intends to cancel the equity shares or hold them in treasury;

(d) if the authority sought related to a proposal to purchase from specific parties, a statement of the names of the persons from whom equity shares are to be acquired together with all material terms of the proposal;

(e) details about the price, or the maximum and minimum price, to be paid;

(f) the total number of warrants and options to subscribe for equity shares that are outstanding at the latest practicable date before the circular is published and both the proportion of issued share capital (excluding treasury shares) that they represent at that time and will represent if the full authority to buyback shares (existing and being sought) is used; and

(g) where LR 12.4.2A R applies, an explanation of the potential impact of the proposed share buyback, including whether control of the listed company may be concentrated following the proposed transaction.

(2) If the exercise in full of the authority sought would result in the purchase of 25% or more of the company's issued equity shares (excluding treasury shares) the circular must also include the following information referred to in the PR Regulation:

(a) Annex 1 item 3.1 – Risk factors;

(b) Annex 1 Section 10 – Trend information;

(c) Annex 1 item 15.2 – Shareholdings and stock options;

(d) Annex 1 item 16.1 – Major interests in shares;

(e) Annex 1 item 18.7.1 – Significant changes in the issuer’s financial position;
(f) Annex 11 item 3.1 – Working capital statement (this must be based on the assumption that the authority sought will be used in full at the maximum price allowed and this assumption must be stated). This information is not required to be included in a circular issued by a closed-ended investment fund.

13.7.1A In considering whether an explanation given in a circular satisfies the requirement in LR 13.7.1R (1)(g), the FCA would expect the following information to be included in the explanation:

(1) the shareholdings of substantial shareholders in the listed company before and after the proposed transaction; and

(2) the shareholdings of a holder of equity shares who may become a substantial shareholder in the listed company as a result of the proposed transaction.

Pro forma financial information

13.7.2 LR 13.3.3 R sets out requirements for pro forma information in a circular relating to the purchase by the company of 25% or more of the company’s issued equity shares (excluding treasury shares).
13.8 Other circulars

Authority to allot shares

13.8.1 A circular relating to a resolution proposing to grant the directors’ authority to allot shares or other securities pursuant to section 551 (Power of directors to allot shares etc: authorisation by company) of the Companies Act 2006 must include:

(1) a statement of the maximum amount of shares or other securities which the directors will have authority to allot and the percentage which that amount represents of the total ordinary share capital in issue (excluding treasury shares) as at the latest practicable date before publication of the circular;

(2) a statement of the number of treasury shares held by the company as at the date of the circular and the percentage which that amount represents of the total ordinary share capital in issue (excluding treasury shares) as at the latest practicable date before publication of the circular;

(3) a statement by the directors as to whether they have any present intention of exercising the authority, and if so for what purpose; and

(4) a statement as to when the authority will lapse.

Disapplying pre-emption rights

13.8.2 A circular relating to a resolution proposing to disapply pre-emption rights provided by LR 9.3.11 R must include:

(1) a statement of the maximum amount of equity securities which the disapplication will cover; and

(2) if there is a general disapplication for equity securities for cash made otherwise than to existing shareholders in proportion to their existing holdings, the percentage which the amount generally disapplied represents of the total equity share capital in issue as at the latest practicable date before publication of the circular.

13.8.3 [deleted]
**Reduction of capital**

13.8.4 R  

A circular relating to a resolution proposing to reduce the company's capital, other than a reduction of capital pursuant to section 626 of the Companies Act 2006 (Reduction of capital in connection with redenomination), must include a statement of the reasons for, and the effects of, the proposal.

**Capitalisation or bonus issue**

13.8.5 R  

(1) A circular relating to a resolution proposing a capitalisation or bonus issue must include:

(a) the reason for the issue;

(b) a statement of the last date on which transfers were or will be accepted for registration to participate in the issue;

(c) details of the proportional entitlement; and

(d) a description of the nature and amount of reserves which are to be capitalised.

(2) Any timetable set out in the circular must have been approved by the RIE on which the company's equity securities are traded.

**Scrip dividend alternative**

13.8.6 R  

(1) A circular containing an offer to shareholders of the right to elect to receive shares instead of all or part of a cash dividend must include:

(a) a statement of the total number of shares that would be issued if all eligible shareholders were to elect to receive shares for their entire shareholdings, and the percentage which that number represents of the equity shares (excluding treasury shares) in issue at the date of the circular;

(b) in a prominent position, details of the equivalent cash dividend foregone to obtain each share or the basis of the calculation of the number of shares to be offered instead of cash;

(c) a statement of the total cash dividend payable and applicable tax credit on the basis that no elections for the scrip dividend alternative are received;

(d) a statement of the date for ascertaining the share price used as a basis for calculating the allocation of shares;

(e) details of the proportional entitlement;

(f) details of what is to happen to fractional entitlements;

(g) the record date; and

(h) a form of election relating to the scrip dividend alternative which:

   (i) is worded so as to ensure that shareholders must elect positively in order to receive shares instead of cash; and

   (ii) includes a statement that the right is non-transferable.

(2) Any timetable set out in the circular must have been approved by the RIE on which the company's equity securities are traded.
Scrip dividend mandate schemes/dividend reinvestment plans

13.8.7 A circular relating to any proposal where shareholders are entitled to complete a mandate in order to receive shares instead of future cash dividends must include:

(a) the information in LR 13.8.6R (1)(d) and (f);
(b) the basis of the calculation of the number of shares to be offered instead of cash;
(c) a statement of last date for lodging notice of participation or cancellation in order for that instruction to be valid for the next dividend;
(d) details of when adjustment to the number of shares subject to the mandate will take place;
(e) details of when cancellation of a mandate instruction will take place;
(f) a statement of whether or not the mandate instruction must be in respect of a shareholder's entire holding;
(g) the procedure for notifying shareholders of the details of each scrip dividend; and
(h) a statement of the circumstances, if known, under which the directors may decide not to offer a scrip alternative in respect of any dividend.

(2) The timetable in the circular for each scrip alternative covered by a scrip dividend mandate plan must have been approved by the RIE on which the company's equity shares are traded.

Notices of meetings

13.8.8 When holders of listed equity shares are sent a notice of meeting which includes any business, other than ordinary business at an annual general meeting, an explanatory circular must accompany the notice. If the other business is to be considered at or on the same day as an annual general meeting, the explanation may be incorporated in the directors' report.

(2) [deleted]

(3) A circular or other document convening an annual general meeting where only ordinary business is proposed does not need to comply with LR 13.3.1R (4), (5) and (6).

13.8.9 A circular or other document convening an annual general meeting where special business is proposed will need to comply with all of LR 13.3.1R (including paragraphs (4), (5) and (6) in respect of special business).

Amendments to constitution

13.8.10 A circular to shareholders about proposed amendments to the constitution must include:

(1) an explanation of the effect of the proposed amendments; and
(2) either the full terms of the proposed amendments, or a statement that the full terms will be available for inspection:

(a) from the date of sending the circular until the close of the relevant general meeting at a place in or near the City of London or such other place as the FCA may determine; and

(b) at the place of the general meeting for at least 15 minutes before and during the meeting.

Employees' share scheme etc

A circular to shareholders about the approval of an employee's share scheme or long-term incentive scheme must:

(1) include either the full text of the scheme or a description of its principal terms;

(2) include, if directors of the listed company are trustees of the scheme, or have a direct or indirect interest in the trustees, details of the trusteeship or interest;

(3) state that the provisions (if any) relating to:

(a) the persons to whom, or for whom, securities, cash or other benefits are provided under the scheme (the "participants");

(b) limitations on the number or amount of the securities, cash or other benefits subject to the scheme;

(c) the maximum entitlement for any one participant; and

(d) the basis for determining a participant's entitlement to, and the terms of, securities, cash or other benefit to be provided and for the adjustment thereof (if any) if there is a capitalisation issue, rights issue or open offer, sub-division or consolidation of shares or reduction of capital or any other variation of capital;

cannot be altered to the advantage of participants without the prior approval of shareholders in general meeting (except for minor amendments to benefit the administration of the scheme, to take account of a change in legislation or to obtain or maintain favourable tax, exchange control or regulatory treatment for participants in the scheme or for the company operating the scheme or for members of its group);

(4) state whether benefits under the scheme will be pensionable and, if so, the reasons for this; and

(5) if the scheme is not circulated to shareholders, include a statement that it will be available for inspection:

(a) from the date of sending the circular until the close of the relevant general meeting at a place in or near the City of London or such other place as the FCA may determine; and

(b) at the place of the general meeting for at least 15 minutes before and during the meeting.

The resolution contained in the notice of meeting accompanying the circular must refer either to:
(1) the scheme itself (if circulated to shareholders); or

(2) the summary of its principal terms included in the circular.

13.8.13 R

The resolution approving the adoption of an employees' share scheme or long-term incentive scheme may authorise the directors to establish further schemes based on any scheme which has previously been approved by shareholders but modified to take account of local tax, exchange control or securities laws in overseas territories, provided that any shares made available under such further schemes are treated as counting against any limits on individual or overall participation in the main scheme.

Amendments to employees' share scheme etc

13.8.14 R

A circular to shareholders about proposed amendments to an employees' share scheme or a long-term incentive scheme must include:

(1) an explanation of the effect of the proposed amendments; and

(2) the full terms of the proposed amendments, or a statement that the full text of the scheme as amended will be available for inspection.

Discounted option arrangements

13.8.15 R

If shareholders' approval is required by LR 9.4.4 R, the circular to shareholders must include the following information:

(1) details of the persons to whom the options, warrants or rights are to be granted; and

(2) a summary of the principal terms of the options, warrants or rights.

Reminders of conversion rights

13.8.16 R

(1) A circular to holders of listed securities convertible into shares reminding them of the times when conversion rights are exercisable must include:

(a) the date of the last day for lodging conversion forms and the date of the expected sending of the certificates;

(b) a statement of the market values for the securities on the first dealing day in each of the six months before the date of the circular and on the latest practicable date before sending the circular;

(c) the basis of conversion in the form of a table setting out capital and income comparisons;

(d) a brief explanation of the tax implications of conversion for holders resident for tax purposes in the United Kingdom;

(e) if there is a trustee, or other representative, of the securities holders to be redeemed, a statement that the trustee, or other representative, has given its consent to the issue of the circular or stated that it has no objection to the resolution being put to a meeting of the securities holders;
(f) reference to future opportunities to convert and whether the terms of conversion will be the same as or will differ from those available at present, or, if there are no such opportunities, disclosure of that fact;

(g) reference to letters of indemnity, for example, if certificates have been lost;

(h) if power exists to allot shares issued on conversion to another person, reference to forms of nomination; and

(i) a statement as to whether holders exercising their rights of conversion will retain the next interest payment due on the securities.

(2) The circular must not contain specific advice as to whether or not to convert the securities.

**Election of independent directors**

Where a listed company has a controlling shareholder, a circular to shareholders relating to the election or re-election of an independent director must include:

(1) details of any existing or previous relationship, transaction or arrangement the proposed independent director has or had with the listed company, its directors, any controlling shareholder or any associate of a controlling shareholder or a confirmation that there have been no such relationships, transactions or arrangements; and

(2) a description of:

(a) why the listed company considers the proposed independent director will be an effective director;

(b) how the listed company has determined that the proposed director is an independent director; and

(c) the process followed by the listed company for the selection of the proposed independent director.

In relation to a listed company which did not previously have a controlling shareholder, LR 13.8.17 R does not apply to a circular sent to shareholders within a period of 3 months from the event that resulted in a person becoming a controlling shareholder of the listed company.
Class 1 circulars

The following table identifies (by reference to certain paragraphs of Annex 1 and Annex 11 of the PR Regulation) the additional information required to be included in a class 1 circular relating to the listed company and the undertaking the subject of the transaction.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Information</th>
<th>Listed Company</th>
<th>Undertaking the subject of the transaction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 3.1 – Risk factors</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 4.1 – Company name</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 4.4 – Company address</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 Section 10 – Trend information</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 14.2 – Service contracts</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 15.2 – Shareholdings and stock options</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 16.1 – Major interests in shares</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 17.1 – Related party transactions</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 18.6.1 – Legal and arbitration proceedings</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 18.7.1 – Significant change in the issuer’s financial position</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 20.1 – Material contracts</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 1 item 21.1 – Documents available</td>
<td>*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annex 11 item 3.1 – Working capital statement]</td>
<td>*</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LR 13 Annex 1.1

1. The information required by this Annex must be presented as follows:

   (1) the information required by Annex 1 item 20.1 (material contracts), Annex 1 item 18.6.1 (legal and arbitration proceedings) and Annex 1 item 18.7.1 (significant changes in the issuer’s financial position)

      (a) for an acquisition, in separate statements for the listed company and its subsidiary undertakings and for the undertaking, business or assets to be acquired; or

      (b) for a disposal, in separate statements for the listed company and its subsidiary undertakings (on the basis that the disposal has taken place), and for the undertaking, business or assets to be disposed of;

   (2) the information required by Annex 11 item 3.1 (working capital statement) and, if relevant Annex 1 section 10 (trend information):

      (a) in the case of an acquisition, in a single statement for the listed company and its subsidiary undertakings (on the basis that the acquisition has taken place); or

      (b) in the case of a disposal, in a single statement for the listed company and its subsidiary undertakings (on the basis that the disposal has taken place).
In determining what information is required to be included by virtue of Annex 1 item 20.1 (material contracts) if a prospectus or listing particulars are not required, regard should be had to whether information about that provision is information which securities holders of the issuer would reasonably require for the purpose of making a properly informed assessment about the way in which to exercise the voting rights attached to their securities or the way in which to take any other action required of them related to the subject matter of the circular.

The information required by this Annex is modified as follows:

1. if the listed company is issuing shares for which listing is sought, the information regarding major interests in shares (Annex 1 item 16.1) and directors' interests in shares (Annex 1 item 15.2) must be given for the share capital both as existing and as enlarged by the shares for which listing is sought;

2. information required by Annex 1 item 17.1 (related party transactions) and Annex 1 item 14.2 (directors' service contracts) does not need to be given if it has already been published before the circular is sent;

3. information referred to in Annex 11 item 3.1 (Working capital statement) is not required to be included in a class 1 circular published by a closed-ended investment fund;

4. information required by Annex 1 item 3.1 should be provided only in respect of those risk factors which:
   a. are material risk factors to the proposed transaction;
   b. will be material new risk factors to the group as a result of the proposed transaction; or
   c. are existing material risk factors to the group which will be impacted by the proposed transaction; and

5. information required by Annex 1 item 21.1 must include a copy of the Sale and Purchase Agreement (or equivalent document) if applicable.
Chapter 14

Standard listing (shares)
14.1 Application

This chapter applies to a company with, or applying for, a standard listing of shares other than:

(1) equity shares issued by a company that is an investment entity unless it has a premium listing of a class of its equity shares; and

(2) preference shares that are specialist securities.
14.2 Requirements for listing

14.2.1 An applicant which is applying for standard listing (shares) must comply with all of ■ LR 2 (Requirements for listing: All securities).

Shares in public hands

14.2.2 (1) If an application is made for the admission of a class of shares, a sufficient number of shares of that class must, no later than the time of admission, be distributed to the public in one or more EEA States.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), account may also be taken of holders in one or more states that are not EEA States, if the shares are listed in the state or states.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a sufficient number of shares will be taken to have been distributed to the public when 25% of the shares for which application for admission has been made are in public hands.

(4) For the purposes of paragraphs (1), (2) and (3), shares are not held in public hands if they are:

(a) held, directly or indirectly by:

(i) a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or

(ii) a person connected with a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or

(iii) the trustees of any employees' share scheme or pension fund established for the benefit of any directors and employees of the applicant and its subsidiary undertakings; or

(iv) any person who under any agreement has a right to nominate a person to the board of directors of the applicant; or

(v) any person or persons in the same group or persons acting in concert who have an interest in 5% or more of the shares of the relevant class; or

(b) subject to a lock-up period of more than 180 days.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (3), treasury shares are not to be taken into consideration when calculating the number of shares of the class.

[Note: Article 48 CARD]
14.2.3 The FCA may modify LR 14.2.2 R to accept a percentage lower than 25% if it considers that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage in view of the large number of shares of the same class and the extent of their distribution to the public. For that purpose, the FCA may take into account shares of the same class that are held (even though they are not listed) in states that are not EEA States. [Note: Article 48 CARD]

14.2.3A When calculating the number of shares for the purposes of LR 14.2.2R (4)(a)(v), holdings of investment managers in the same group where investment decisions are made independently by the individual in control of the relevant fund and those decisions are unfettered by the group to which the investment manager belongs will be disregarded.

Shares of a non-EEA company

14.2.4 The FCA will not admit shares of a company incorporated in a non-EEA State that are not listed either in its country of incorporation or in the country in which a majority of its shares are held, unless the FCA is satisfied that the absence of the listing is not due to the need to protect investors. [Note: Article 51 CARD]

Listing applications

14.2.5 A company applying for a standard listing of shares will need to comply with LR 3 (Listing applications: All securities).

14.2.6 [deleted]
14.3 Continuing obligations

Admission to trading

14.3.1 R Other than in regard to securities to which LR 4 applies, the listed equity shares of a company must be admitted to trading on a regulated market for listed securities operated by a RIE.

Shares in public hands

14.3.2 R (1) A company must comply with LR 14.2.2 R at all times.

(2) A company that no longer complies with LR 14.2.2 R must notify the FCA as soon as possible of its non-compliance.

14.3.2A G Where the FCA has modified LR 14.2.2 R to accept a percentage lower than 25% on the basis that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage, but the FCA considers that in practice the market for the shares is not operating properly, the FCA may revoke the modification in accordance with LR 1.2.1 R (4).

14.3.3 G A company should consider LR 5.2.2G (2) in relation to its compliance with LR 14.2.2 R.

Further issues

14.3.4 R Where shares of the same class as shares that are listed are allotted, an application for admission to listing of such shares must be made as soon as possible and in any event within one year of the allotment. [Note: Article 64 CARD]

Copies of documents

14.3.6 R A company must forward to the FCA, for publication through the document viewing facility, two copies of:

(1) all circulars, notices, reports or other documents to which the listing rules apply, at the same time as any such documents are issued; and
(2) all resolutions passed by the company other than resolutions concerning ordinary business at an annual general meeting, as soon as possible after the relevant general meeting.

14.3.7 R

(1) A company must notify a RIS as soon as possible when a document has been forwarded to the FCA under LR 14.3.6 R unless the full text of the document is provided to the RIS.

(2) A notification made under (1) must set out where copies of the relevant document can be obtained.

Contact details

14.3.8 R

A company must ensure that the FCA is provided with up to date contact details of appropriate persons nominated by it to act as the first point of contact with the FCA in relation to the company’s compliance with the listing rules and the disclosure requirements and transparency rules, as applicable.

Temporary documents of title (including renounceable documents)

14.3.9 R

A company must ensure that any temporary document of title (other than one issued in global form) for a share:

(1) is serially numbered;

(2) states where applicable:

(a) the name and address of the first holder and names of joint holders (if any);

(b) the pro rata entitlement;

(c) the last date on which transfers were or will be accepted for registration for participation in the issue;

(d) how the shares rank for dividend or interest;

(e) the nature of the document of title and proposed date of issue;

(f) how fractions (if any) are to be treated; and

(g) for a rights issue, the time, being not less than 10 business days calculated in accordance with LR 9.5.6 R, in which the offer may be accepted, and how shares not taken up will be dealt with; and

(3) if renounceable:

(a) states in a heading that the document is of value and negotiable;

(b) advises holders of shares who are in any doubt as to what action to take to consult appropriate independent advisers immediately;

(c) states that where all of the shares have been sold by the addressee (other than ex rights or ex capitalisation), the document should be passed to the person through whom the sale was effected for transmission to the purchaser;

(d) has the form of renunciation and the registration instructions printed on the back of, or attached to, the document;
(e) includes provision for splitting (without fee) and for split documents to be certified by an official of the company or authorised agent;

(f) provides for the last day for renunciation to be the second business day after the last day for splitting; and

(g) if at the same time as an allotment is made of shares issued for cash, shares of the same class are also allotted credited as fully paid to vendors or others, provides for the period for renunciation to be the same as, but no longer than, that provided for in the case of shares issued for cash.

Definitive documents of title

A company must ensure that any definitive document of title for a share (other than a bearer security) includes the following matters on its face (or on the reverse in the case of (5) and (7)):

1. the authority under which the company is constituted and the country of incorporation and registered number (if any);

2. the number or amount of shares the certificate represents and, if applicable, the number and denomination of units (in the top right-hand corner);

3. a footnote stating that no transfer of the share or any portion of it represented by the certificate can be registered without production of the certificate;

4. if applicable, the minimum amount and multiples thereof in which the share is transferable;

5. the date of the certificate;

6. for a fixed income security, the interest payable and the interest payment dates and on the reverse (with reference shown on the face) an easily legible summary of the rights as to redemption or repayment and (where applicable) conversion; and

7. for shares with preferential rights, on the face (or, if not practicable, on the reverse), a statement of the conditions thereof as to capital, dividends and (where applicable) conversion.

Disclosure Requirements and Transparency Rules

A company whose shares are admitted to trading on a regulated market in the United Kingdom, should consider its obligations under the disclosure requirements and transparency rules.
Registrar

14.3.15

R

(1) This rule applies to an overseas company for whom the United Kingdom is a host Member State for the purposes of the Transparency Directive.

(2) An overseas company must appoint a registrar in the United Kingdom if:

(a) there are 200 or more holders resident in the United Kingdom; or
(b) 10% of more of the shares are held by persons resident in the United Kingdom.

14.3.15A

G

An overseas company for whom the United Kingdom is the home Member State for the purposes of the Transparency Directive should see ■ LR 14.3.22 G and ■ LR 14.3.23 R.

14.3.16

G

[deleted]

Notifications relating to capital

14.3.17

R

A company must notify a RIS as soon as possible (unless otherwise indicated in this rule) of the following information relating to its capital:

(1) any proposed change in its capital structure including the structure of its listed debt securities, save that an announcement of a new issue may be delayed while marketing or underwriting is in progress;

(2) [deleted]

(3) any redemption of listed shares including details of the number of shares redeemed and the number of shares of that class outstanding following the redemption;

(4) [deleted]

(5) any extension of time granted for the currency of temporary documents of title;

(6) [deleted]

(7) the results of any new issue of listed equity securities or of a public offering of existing shares or other equity securities.

14.3.18

R

Where the shares are subject to an underwriting agreement a company may, at its discretion and subject to the disclosure requirements and contents of ■ DTR 2 delay notifying a RIS as required by ■ LR 14.3.17R (7) for up to two business days until the obligation by the underwriter to take or procure others to take shares is finally determined or lapses. In the case of
an issue or offer of shares which is not underwritten, notification of the result must be made as soon as it is known.

14.3.19 [deleted]

14.3.20 [deleted]

14.3.21 [deleted]

Compliance with the transparency rules and corporate governance rules

14.3.22 A company, whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules) and DTR 6 (Access to information).

14.3.23 A listed company that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules (or with corresponding requirements imposed by another EEA Member State) must comply with DTR 4, DTR 5 and DTR 6 as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the transparency rules.

14.3.24 A listed company that is not already required to comply with DTR 7.2 (Corporate governance statements), or with corresponding requirements imposed by another EEA State, must comply with DTR 7.2 as if it were an issuer to which that section applies.

14.3.25 A company with a standard listing of equity shares (other than an open-ended investment company) that is not already required to comply with:

(1) DTR 7.3 (Related party transactions); or

(2) requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.3;

must comply with DTR 7.3 as if it were an issuer to which DTR 7.3 applies, subject to the modifications set out in LR 14.3.26R.

14.3.26 For the purposes of LR 14.3.25R, DTR 7.3 is modified as follows:

(1) DTR 7.3.2R must be read as if the words “has the meaning in IFRS” are replaced by:

“has the meaning:

(a) in IFRS; or

(b) where the listed company prepares annual consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting standards which have been determined to be equivalent to IFRS by the European Commission in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No. 1569/2007 of 21 December 2007 establishing a mechanism for the

(i) in IFRS, or

(ii) in the equivalent accounting standards in accordance with which its annual consolidated financial statements are prepared;

at the choice of the listed company."

(2) DTR 7.3.8R(2) and (3) do not apply;

(3) DTR 7.3.9R must be read as follows:

(a) as if the words “after obtaining board approval” are replaced by “after publishing an announcement in accordance with DTR 7.3.8R(1)”; and

(b) the reference to DTR 7.3.8R must be read as a reference to DTR 7.3.8R as modified by LR 14.3.26R(2); and

(4) in DTR 7.3.13R the references to DTR 7.3.8R must be read as references to DTR 7.3.8R as modified by LR 14.3.26R(2).
Chapter 15

Closed-Ended Investment Funds: Premium listing
15.1 Application

15.1.1 This chapter applies to a closed-ended investment fund applying for, or with, a premium listing.
15.2 Requirements for listing

15.2.1 To be listed, an applicant must comply with:

1. LR 2 (Requirements for listing);

2. the following provisions of LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)):
   a. LR 6.2.4R (1) and LR 6.2.4R(2), if the applicant is a new applicant for the admission of equity shares and it has published or filed audited accounts;
   b. LR 6.2.6R;
   c. LR 6.7.1R, LR 6.9.1R(1), LR 6.9.2R, LR 6.14.1R to LR 6.14.5G, and LR 6.15.1R; and

3. LR 15.2.2 R to LR 15.2.13A R.

Shares of a non-EEA company

The FCA will not admit shares of a company incorporated in a non-EEA State that are not listed either in its country of incorporation or in the country in which a majority of its shares are held, unless the FCA is satisfied that the absence of the listing is not due to the need to protect investors.

[Note: Article 51 CARD]

Investment activity

An applicant must invest and manage its assets in a way which is consistent with its object of spreading investment risk.

[deleted]

15.2.3A (1) An applicant and its subsidiary undertakings must not conduct any trading activity which is significant in the context of its group as a whole.

(2) This rule does not prevent the businesses forming part of the investment portfolio of the applicant from conducting trading activities themselves.

[deleted]
Although there is no restriction on an applicant taking a controlling stake in an investee company, to ensure a spread of investment risk an applicant should avoid:

1. cross-financing between the businesses forming part of its investment portfolio including, for example, through the provision of undertakings or security for borrowings by such businesses for the benefit of another; and

2. the operation of common treasury functions as between the applicant and investee companies.

Cross-holdings

1. No more than 10%, in aggregate, of the value of the total assets of an applicant at admission may be invested in other listed closed-ended investment funds.

2. The restriction in (1) does not apply to investments in closed-ended investment funds which themselves have published investment policies to invest no more than 15% of their total assets in other listed closed-ended investment funds.

Feeder funds

1. If an applicant principally invests its funds in another company or fund that invests in a portfolio of investments (a "master fund"), the applicant must ensure that:

   a. the master fund's investment policies are consistent with the applicant's published investment policy and provide for spreading investment risk; and

   b. the master fund in fact invests and manages its investments in a way that is consistent with the applicant's published investment policy and spreads investment risk.

2. Paragraph (1) applies whether the applicant invests its funds in the master fund directly or indirectly through other intermediaries.

3. Where the applicant invests in the master fund through a chain of intermediaries between the applicant and the master fund, the applicant must ensure that each intermediary in the chain complies with paragraphs (1)(a) and (b).

Investment policy

An applicant must have a published investment policy that contains information about the policies which the closed-ended investment fund will follow relating to asset allocation, risk diversification, and gearing, and that includes maximum exposures.
15.2.8 G The information in the investment policy, including quantitative information concerning the exposures mentioned in §LR 15.2.7 R, should be sufficiently precise and clear as to enable an investor to:

(1) assess the investment opportunity;

(2) identify how the objective of risk spreading is to be achieved; and

(3) assess the significance of any proposed change of investment policy.

15.2.9 R [deleted]

15.2.10 G [deleted]

**Independence**

15.2.11 R The board of directors or equivalent body of the applicant must be able to act independently:

(1) of any investment manager appointed to manage investments of the applicant; and

(2) if the applicant (either directly or through other intermediaries) has an investment policy of principally investing its funds in another company or fund that invests in a portfolio of investments (“a master fund”), of the master fund and of any investment manager of the master fund.

15.2.11A R §LR 15.2.11R (2) does not apply if the company or fund which invests its funds in another company or fund is a subsidiary undertaking of the applicant.

15.2.12 G [deleted]

15.2.12-A R For the purposes of §LR 15.2.11 R:

(1) the chairman of the board or equivalent body of the applicant must be independent; and

(2) a majority of the board or equivalent body of the applicant must be independent (the chairman may be included within that majority).

15.2.12A R For the purposes of §LR 15.2.11 R and §LR 15.2.12-A R, the following are not independent:

(1) directors, employees, partners, officers or professional advisers of or to:

   (a) an investment manager of the applicant; or

   (b) a master fund or investment manager referred to in §LR 15.2.11R (2); or
(c) any other company in the same group as the investment manager of the applicant; or

(2) directors, employees or professional advisers of or to other investment companies or funds that are:

(a) managed by the same investment manager as the investment manager to the applicant; or

(b) managed by any other company in the same group as the investment manager to the applicant.

15.2.13 [deleted]

15.2.13A R A person referred to in LR 15.2.12AR (1) or (2) who is a director of the applicant must be subject to annual re-election by the applicant's shareholders.

15.2.14 [deleted]

15.2.15 [deleted]

15.2.16 [deleted]

15.2.17 [deleted]

15.2.18 [deleted]

15.2.19 R The board of directors or equivalent body of the applicant must be in a position to effectively monitor and manage the performance of its key service providers, including any investment manager of the applicant.
15.3 Listing applications and procedures

15.3.1 G An applicant is required to comply with □ LR 3 (Listing applications).

Sponsors

15.3.2 G An applicant that is seeking admission of its equity shares is required to retain a sponsor in accordance with □ LR 8 (Sponsors).

15.3.3 R An applicant must appoint a sponsor on each occasion that it makes an application for admission of equity shares which requires the production of listing particulars.

Multi-class fund or umbrella fund

15.3.4 R An application for the listing of securities of a multi-class fund or umbrella fund must provide details of the various classes or designations of securities intended to be issued by the applicant.
## 15.4 Continuing obligations

### Compliance with LR 9

15.4.1 **R** A closed-ended investment fund must comply with all of the requirements of **LR 9** (Continuing obligations) subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in this section.

### Investment policy

15.4.1A **R** A closed-ended investment fund must, at all times, have a published investment policy which complies with **LR 15.2.7 R**.

15.4.1B **G** A closed-ended investment fund should have regard to the guidance in **LR 15.2.8 G** at all times.

### Investment activity and compliance with investment policy

15.4.2 **R** A closed-ended investment fund must, at all times, invest and manage its assets:

1. in a way which is consistent with its object of spreading investment risk; and
2. in accordance with its published investment policy.

15.4.3 **G** [deleted]

15.4.3A **R** A closed-ended investment fund must comply with **LR 15.2.3A R** at all times.

15.4.4 **R** [deleted]

15.4.4A **G** A closed-ended investment fund should have regard to the guidance in **LR 15.2.4A G** at all times.
### Cross-holdings

**15.4.5**  
A *closed-ended investment fund* must, when making an acquisition of a constituent investment, observe the principles relating to cross-holdings in **LR 15.2.5 R**.

### Feeder funds

**15.4.6**  
If a *closed-ended investment fund* principally invests its funds in the manner set out in **LR 15.2.6 R**, the *closed-ended investment fund* must ensure that **LR 15.2.6 R** is complied with at all times.

**15.4.6A**  
**LR 15.2.6 R** and **LR 15.4.6 R** are not intended to require the *closed-ended investment fund* to be able to control or direct the master fund or intermediary (as the case may be). But if the *closed-ended investment fund* becomes aware that the master fund or intermediary (as the case may be) is not investing or managing its investments in accordance with that rule it will need to immediately consider withdrawal of its funds from the master fund or intermediary (as the case may be) or other appropriate action so that it is no longer in breach of the *rules*.

### Independence and effective management

**15.4.7**  
**LR 15.2.11 R** to **LR 15.2.13A R** apply at all times to a *closed-ended investment fund*.

**15.4.7A**  
The board of *directors* or equivalent body of the *issuer* must effectively monitor and manage the performance of its key service providers, including any *investment manager* appointed by the *issuer*, on an on-going basis.

### Material changes to investment policy

**15.4.8**  
Unless **LR 15.4.8A R** applies, a *closed-ended investment fund* must:

1. submit any proposed material change to its published investment policy to the *FCA* for approval; and
2. having obtained the *FCA*’s approval, obtain the prior approval of its shareholders to any material change to its published investment policy.

**15.4.8A**  
A *closed-ended investment fund* is not required to seek the *FCA*’s approval for a material change to its published investment policy if:

1. the change is proposed to enable the winding up of the *closed-ended investment fund*; and
2. the winding up:
   1. is in accordance with the constitution of the *closed-ended investment fund*; and
   2. will be submitted for approval by the shareholders of the *closed-ended investment fund* at the same time as the proposed material change to the investment policy.
In considering what is a material change to the published investment policy, the closed-ended investment fund should have regard to the cumulative effect of all the changes since its shareholders last had the opportunity to vote on the investment policy or, if they have never voted, since the admission to listing.

Conversion of an existing listed class of equity shares

An existing listed class of equity shares may not be converted into a new class or an unlisted class unless prior approval has been given by the shareholders of that existing class.

Further issues

(1) Unless authorised by its shareholders, a closed-ended investment fund may not issue further shares of the same class as existing shares (including issues of treasury shares) for cash at a price below the net asset value per share of those shares unless they are first offered pro rata to existing holders of shares of that class.

(2) When calculating the net asset value per share, treasury shares held by the closed-ended investment fund should not be taken into account.

Cancellation of premium listing

A closed-ended investment fund must comply with LR 5.2.7A R

15.4.9  In considering what is a material change to the published investment policy,
the closed-ended investment fund should have regard to the cumulative
effect of all the changes since its shareholders last had the opportunity to
vote on the investment policy or, if they have never voted, since the
admission to listing.

Conversion of an existing listed class of equity shares

15.4.10  An existing listed class of equity shares may not be converted into a new
class or an unlisted class unless prior approval has been given by the
shareholders of that existing class.

Further issues

15.4.11  (1) Unless authorised by its shareholders, a closed-ended investment fund
may not issue further shares of the same class as existing shares
(including issues of treasury shares) for cash at a price below the net
asset value per share of those shares unless they are first offered pro
rata to existing holders of shares of that class.

(2) When calculating the net asset value per share, treasury shares held
by the closed-ended investment fund should not be taken into
account.

Cancellation of premium listing
Externally managed companies

15.4.26  A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 9.2.20 R.

Independent business

15.4.27  A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 9.2.2A R to R LR 9.2.2G R.

Notifications to the FCA

15.4.28  (1) A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 9.2.23 R in so far as it relates to R LR 9.2.2A R, R LR 9.2.2E R and R LR 9.2.2F R.

(2) A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 9.2.24 R to R LR 9.2.25 R.

Annual financial statement

15.4.29  A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 9.8.4R (14).

Election of independent directors

15.4.30  A closed-ended investment fund is not required to comply with R LR 13.8.17 R.
15.5 Transactions

15.5.1 [deleted]

**Significant transactions**

A closed-ended investment fund must comply with §LR 10 (Significant transactions) and §LR 5.6, except in relation to transactions that are executed in accordance with the scope of its published investment policy.

**Transactions with related parties**

§LR 11 (Related party transactions) applies to a closed-ended investment fund.
15.5.4 In addition to the definition in §LR 11.1.4 R a related party includes any investment manager of the closed-ended investment fund and any member of such investment manager’s group.

Additional exemption from related party requirements

15.5.5 (1) §LR 11.1.7 R to §LR 11.1.11 R do not apply to an arrangement between a closed-ended investment fund and its investment manager or any member of that investment manager’s group where the arrangement is such that each invests in or provides finance to an entity or asset and the investment or provision of finance is either:

(a) made at the same time and on substantially the same economic and financial terms; or

(b) referred to in the closed-ended investment fund’s published investment policy; or

(c) made in accordance with a pre-existing agreement between the closed-ended investment fund and its investment manager.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(c), a pre-existing agreement is an agreement which was entered into at the time the investment manager was appointed.
15.6 Notifications and periodic financial information

Changes to tax status

15.6.1 A closed-ended investment fund must notify any change in its taxation status to a RIS as soon as possible.

Annual financial report

15.6.2 In addition to the requirements in LR 9.8 (Annual financial report), a closed-ended investment fund must include in its annual financial report:

(1) a statement (including a quantitative analysis) explaining how it has invested its assets with a view to spreading investment risk in accordance with its published investment policy;

(2) a statement, set out in a prominent position, as to whether in the opinion of the directors, the continuing appointment of the investment manager on the terms agreed is in the interests of its shareholders as a whole, together with a statement of the reasons for this view;

(3) the names of the fund’s investment managers and a summary of the principal contents of any agreements between the closed-ended investment fund and each of the investment managers, including but not limited to:

   (a) an indication of the terms and duration of their appointment;

   (b) the basis for their remuneration; and

   (c) any arrangements relating to the termination of their appointment, including compensation payable in the event of termination;

(4) [deleted]

(5) the full text of its current published investment policy; and

(6) a comprehensive and meaningful analysis of its portfolio.

Annual financial report additional requirements for property investment entities

15.6.3 A closed-ended investment fund that, as at the end of its financial year, has invested more than 20% of its assets in property must include in its annual
financial report a summary of the valuation of its portfolio, carried out in accordance with LR 15.6.4 R.

15.6.4  R
A valuation required by LR 15.6.3 R must:

(1) either:
   (a) be made in accordance with the Appraisal and Valuation Standards (6th edition) issued by the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors; or
   (b) where the valuation does not comply in all applicable respects with the Appraisal and Valuation Standards (6th edition) issued by the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors, include a statement which sets out a full explanation of such non-compliance; and

(2) be carried out by an external valuer as defined in the Appraisal and Valuation Standards (6th edition) issued by the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors.

15.6.5  R
The summary described in LR 15.6.3 R must include:

(1) the total value of properties held at the year end;
(2) totals of the cost of properties acquired;
(3) the net book value of properties disposed of during the year; and
(4) an indication of the geographical location and type of properties held at the year end.

Statement regarding compliance with UK Corporate Governance Code

15.6.6  R
(1) This rule applies to a closed-ended investment fund that has no executive directors.

(2) A closed-ended investment fund's statement required by LR 9.8.6R (6) need not include details about the following principles and provisions of the UK Corporate Governance Code except to the extent that those principles or provisions relate specifically to non-executive directors:

   (a) Principle D.1 (including Code Provisions D.1.1 to D.1.5): and
   (b) Principle D.2 (including Code Provisions D.2.1 to D.2.4).

Annual financial and half yearly report

15.6.7  R
In addition to the requirements in LR 9 (Continuing obligations), half-yearly reports and, if applicable, preliminary statements of annual results must include information showing the split between:

(1) dividend and interest received; and
(2) other forms of income (including income of associated companies).
Notification of cross-holdings

A closed-ended investment fund must notify to a RIS within five business days of the end of each quarter a list of all investments in other listed closed-ended investment funds, as at the last business day of that quarter, which themselves do not have stated investment policies to invest no more than 15% of their total assets in other listed closed-ended investment funds.
Chapter 16

Open-ended investment companies: Premium listing
16.1 Application

This chapter applies to an open-ended investment company applying for, or with, a premium listing which is:

(1) an ICVC that has been granted an authorisation order by the FCA; or

(2) an overseas collective investment scheme that is a recognised scheme.
16.2 Requirements and eligibility for listing

16.2.1 To be listed, an applicant must comply with:

(1) LR 2 (Requirements for listing); and

(2) only LR 6.8.1R to LR 6.8.2R of LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing commercial company).
16.3 Listing applications

16.3.1 An applicant for admission is required to comply with [LR 3 (Listing applications)].

16.3.2 The FCA will admit to listing such number of securities as the applicant may request for the purpose of future issues. At the time of issue the securities will be designated to the relevant class.

Sponsors

16.3.3 An applicant that is seeking admission of its equity shares must retain a sponsor in accordance with [LR 8 (Sponsors)].

16.3.4 An applicant must appoint a sponsor when it makes an application for admission of equity shares which requires the production of listing particulars.

16.3.5 [deleted]

Multi-class fund or umbrella fund

16.3.6 An applicant which is a multi-class or umbrella fund which seeks to create a new class of security without increasing its share capital for which listing has previously been granted, must provide the FCA with the details of the new class and no further application for listing is required.
16.4 Requirements with continuing application

16.4.1 An open-ended investment company must comply with:


(2) LR 15.5.1 R;

(3) LR 15.6.1 R; and

(4) the condition set out in LR 16.1.1 R (1) or (2).

16.4.2 LR 15.6.6 R applies to an open-ended investment company if it has no executive directors.

16.4.3 The interests of a single person or entity which exceeds 10% of the issued shares (calculated exclusive of treasury shares) of any class of share in the capital of the open-ended investment company must, so far as they are known to it, be notified to a RIS as soon as possible following the open-ended investment company becoming aware of those interests.

16.4.4 LR 10 (Significant transactions) and LR 12 (Dealing in own securities and treasury shares) do not apply to an open-ended investment company.

Cancellation of premium listing

16.4.5 An open-ended investment company must comply with LR 5.2.7A R

Election of independent directors

16.4.7 A open-ended investment company is not required to comply with LR 13.8.17 R.
Chapter 17

Debt and debt-like securities: Standard listing
17.1 Application

This chapter applies to

(1) an issuer of any of the following types of securities:
   (a) debt securities;
   (b) asset-backed securities;
   (c) certificates representing debt securities;
   (d) specialist securities of the following types:
      (i) convertible securities which convert to debt securities;
      (ii) convertible securities which convert to equity securities;
      (iii) convertible securities which are exchangeable for securities of another company; and
      (iv) preference shares

An issuer, as described in R17.1.1 R includes:

(1) a state monopoly;
(2) a state finance organisation;
(3) a statutory body; and
(4) an OECD state guaranteed issuer.

A state, a regional or local authority or a public international body with listed debt securities should see LR 17.5 for its continuing obligations
17.2 Requirements for listing and listing applications

Requirements for listing

17.2.1 An issuer to whom this chapter applies will need to comply with LR 2 (Requirements for listing - all securities).

Listing Applications

17.2.2 An issuer to whom this chapter applies will need to comply with LR 3 (Listing applications).
17.3 Requirements with continuing application

Copies of documents

17.3.1 R (1) An issuer must forward to the FCA, for publication through the document viewing facility, two copies of any document required by LR 17.3 or LR 17.4 at the same time the document is issued.

(2) An issuer must notify a RIS as soon as possible when a document has been forwarded to the FCA under paragraph (1) unless the full text of the document is provided to the RIS.

(3) A notification made under paragraph (2) must set out where copies of the relevant document can be obtained.

Admission to trading

17.3.2 R (1) An issuer's securities must be admitted to trading on a RIE's market for listed securities at all times.

(2) An issuer must inform the FCA in writing without delay if it has:
   (a) requested a RIE to admit or re-admit any of its listed securities to trading; or
   (b) requested a RIE to cancel or suspend trading of any of its listed securities; or
   (c) been informed by a RIE that the trading of any of its listed securities will be cancelled or suspended.

[deleted]

Annual accounts

17.3.3A R LR 17.3.4 R to LR 17.3.6 G apply to an issuer that is not already required to comply with DTR 4.

17.3.4 R (1) An issuer must publish its annual report and annual accounts as soon as possible after they have been approved.
(2) An issuer must approve and publish its annual report and accounts within six months of the end of the financial period to which they relate.

(3) The annual report and accounts must:

(a) have been prepared in accordance with the issuer's national law and, in all material respects, with national accounting standards or IAS; and

(b) have been independently audited and reported on, in accordance with:

(i) the auditing standards applicable in an EEA State; or

(ii) an equivalent auditing standard.

17.3.5

(1) If an issuer prepares both own and consolidated annual accounts it may publish either form provided that the unpublished accounts do not contain any significant additional information.

(2) If the annual accounts do not give a true and fair view of the assets and liabilities, financial position and profits or losses of the issuer or group, additional information must be provided to the satisfaction of the FCA.

(3) An issuer incorporated or established in a non-EEA State which is not required to draw up its accounts so as to give a true and fair view but is required to draw them up to an equivalent standard, may draw up its accounts to this equivalent standard.

17.3.6

An issuer that meets the following criteria is not required to comply with LR 17.3.4 R:

(1) The issuer is an issuer of asset backed securities and would if it were a debt issuer to which DTR 4 applied be relieved of the obligations to draw up and publish annual and half yearly financial reports in accordance with DTR 4.4.2 R provided the issuer is not otherwise required to comply with any other requirement for the publication of annual reports and accounts.

(2) (a) the issuer:

(i) is a wholly owned subsidiary of a listed company;

(ii) issues listed securities that are unconditionally and irrevocably guaranteed by the issuer's listed holding company or equivalent arrangements are in place;

(iii) is included in the consolidated accounts of its listed holding company; and

(iv) is not required to comply with any other requirement for the preparation of annual report and accounts; and

(b) non publication of the issuer's accounts would not be likely to mislead the public with regard to facts and circumstances that are essential for assessing the securities.
Disclosure requirements and transparency rules

An issuer, whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market in the United Kingdom, should consider the obligations referred to under articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

An issuer that is not already required to comply with the obligations under articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation must comply with those obligations as if it were an issuer for the purposes of articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation and the transparency rules, subject to article 22 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

An issuer, whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules) and DTR 6 (Access to information).

An issuer that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules must comply with DTR 6.3 as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the transparency rules.

Amendments to trust deeds

An issuer must ensure that any circular it issues to holders of its listed securities about proposed amendments to a trust deed includes:

1. an explanation of the effect of the proposed amendments; and
2. either the full terms of the proposed amendments, or a statement that they will be available for inspection:
   a. from the date the circular is sent until the close of the relevant general meeting at a place in or near the City of London or such other place as the FCA may determine; and
   b. at the place of the general meeting for at least 15 minutes before and during the meeting.

Early redemptions

(1) An issuer must ensure that any circular it issues to holders of its listed securities relating to a resolution proposing to redeem listed securities before their due date for redemption includes:
   a. an explanation of the reasons for the early redemption;
   b. a statement of the market values for the securities on the first dealing day in each of the six months before the date of the circular and on the latest practicable date before sending the circular;
   c. a statement of any interests of any director in the securities;
   d. if there is a trustee, or other representative, of the holders of the securities to be redeemed, a statement that the trustee, or other
representative, has given its consent to the issue of the circular or stated that it has no objection to the resolution being put to a meeting of the securities holders;

(e) the timetable for redemption; and

(f) an explanation of the procedure to be followed by the securities holders.

(2) The circular must not contain specific advice about whether or not to accept the proposal for redemption.

(3) The timetable for redemption in the circular must have been approved by the RIE on which the listed securities are traded.

**Documents of title**

An issuer must ensure that any definitive document of title for a security (other than a bearer security) includes the following matters on its face (or on the reverse in the case of paragraph (5)):

(1) the authority under which the issuer is constituted and the country of incorporation and registered number (if any);

(2) the number or amount of securities the certificate represents and, if applicable, the number and denomination of units (in the top right-hand corner);

(3) a footnote stating that no transfer of the security or any portion of it represented by the certificate can be registered without production of the certificate;

(4) if applicable, the minimum amount and multiples thereof in which the security is transferable; and

(5) [deleted]

(6) the interest payable and the interest payment dates and on the reverse (with reference shown on the face) an easily legible summary of the rights as to redemption or repayment and (where applicable) conversion.
In the case of debt securities guaranteed by another company, an issuer must submit to the FCA the annual report and accounts of the company that is providing the guarantee unless that company is listed or adequate information is otherwise available.

In the case of convertible securities which are exchangeable for securities of another company, an issuer must submit to the FCA the annual report and accounts of that other company unless that company is listed or adequate information is otherwise available.

Disclosure: asset-backed securities

Where an issuer proposes to issue further debt securities that are:

1. backed by the same assets; and
2. not fungible with existing classes of debt securities; or
(3) not subordinated to existing classes of debt securities;

the issuer must inform the holders of the existing classes of debt securities.
17.5 Requirements for states, regional and local authorities and public international bodies

17.5.1 This chapter does not apply to a state, a regional or local authority and a public international body with listed debt securities except that such an issuer must comply with LR 17.3.2 R (Admission to trading).

Compliance with transparency rules

17.5.2 (1) This rule applies to a state, a regional or local authority and a public international body with listed debt securities for whom the United Kingdom is its home Member State for the purposes of the Transparency Directive.

(2) An issuer referred to in paragraph (1) that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules must comply with:

(a) DTR 5.6.3 R (disclosure of changes in rights);
(b) [deleted]
(c) DTR 6.1.3 R (2) (equality of treatment);
(d) DTR 6.2 (Filing information and use of language); and
(e) DTR 6.3 (Dissemination of information).
Chapter 18

Certificates representing certain securities: Standard listing
This chapter applies in respect of a standard listing of certificates representing certain securities and applies to:

(1) a depositary; and

(2) an issuer of the securities which are represented by certificates.
18.2 Requirements for listing

Issuer of securities is taken to be the issuer

18.2.1 R If an application is made for the admission of certificates representing certain securities, the issuer of the securities which the certificates represent is the issuer for the purpose of the listing rules and the application will be dealt with as if it were an application for the admission of the securities.

Certificates representing certain securities

18.2.2 R For certificates representing certain securities to be admitted to listing an issuer of the securities which the certificates represent must comply with LR 18.2.3 R to LR 18.2.7 G.

18.2.3 R An issuer must be:

(1) duly incorporated or otherwise validly established according to the relevant laws of its place of incorporation or establishment; and

(2) operating in conformity with its constitution. [Note: Articles 42 and 52 CARD]

18.2.4 R For the certificates to be listed, the securities which the certificates represent must:

(1) conform with the law of the issuer’s place of incorporation;

(2) be duly authorised according to the requirements of the issuer’s constitution; and

(3) have any necessary statutory or other consents. [Note: Articles 45 and 53 CARD]

18.2.5 R (1) For the certificates to be listed, the securities which the certificates represent must be freely transferable. [Note: Articles 46, 54 and 60 CARD]

(2) For the certificates to be listed, the securities which the certificates represent must be fully paid and free from all liens and from any restriction on the right of transfer (except any restriction imposed for failure to comply with a notice under section 793 of the Companies Act 2006 (Notice by company requiring information about interests in its shares)).
18.2.6 G The FCA may modify LR 18.2.5 R to allow partly paid securities if it is satisfied that their transferability is not restricted and investors have been provided with appropriate information to enable dealings in the securities to take place on an open and proper basis. [Note: Articles 46 and 54 CARD]

18.2.7 G The FCA may, in exceptional circumstances, modify or dispense with LR 18.2.5 R where the issuer has the power to disapprove the transfer of securities if the FCA is satisfied that this power would not disturb the market in those securities.

Certificates representing equity securities of an overseas company

18.2.8 R (1) If an application is made for the admission of a class of certificates representing shares of an overseas company, a sufficient number of certificates must, no later than the time of admission, be distributed to the public in one or more EEA States.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), account may also be taken of holders in one or more states that are not EEA States, if the certificates are listed in the state or states.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a sufficient number of certificates will be taken to have been distributed to the public when 25% of the certificates for which application for admission has been made are in public hands.

(4) For the purposes of paragraphs (1), (2) and (3), certificates are not held in public hands if they are:

(a) held, directly or indirectly by:

   (i) a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or

   (ii) a person connected with a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or

   (iii) the trustees of any employees' share scheme or pension fund established for the benefit of any directors and employees of the applicant and its subsidiary undertakings; or

   (iv) any person who under any agreement has a right to nominate a person to the board of directors of the applicant; or

   (v) any person or persons in the same group or persons acting in concert who have an interest in 5% or more of the certificates of the relevant class.

(b) subject to a lock-up period of more than 180 calendar days.

18.2.9 G The FCA may modify LR 18.2.8 R to accept a percentage lower than 25% if it considers that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage in view of the large number of certificates of the same class and the extent of
their distribution to the public. For that purpose, the FCA may take into account certificates of the same class that are held (even though they are not listed) in states that are not EEA States. [Note: Article 48 CARD]

18.2.9A G When calculating the number of certificates for the purposes of ■ LR 18.2.8R (4)(a)(v), holdings of investment managers in the same group where investment decisions are made independently by the individual in control of the relevant fund and those decisions are unfettered by the group to which the investment manager belongs will be disregarded.

18.2.10 R [deleted]

Certificates representing securities of an investment entity.

18.2.10A R Certificates representing equity securities of an investment entity (wherever incorporated or established) will be admitted to listing only if the equity securities they represent are already listed or are the subject of an application for listing at the same time.

Additional requirements for the certificates

18.2.11 R To be listed, the certificates representing certain securities must satisfy the requirements set out in ■ LR 2.2.2 R to ■ LR 2.2.11 R. For this purpose, in those rules references to securities are to be read as references to the certificates representing certain securities for which application for listing is made.

18.2.12 R To be listed, the certificates representing certain securities must not impose obligations on the depositary that issues the certificates except to the extent necessary to protect the certificate-holders rights to, and the transmission of entitlements of, the securities.

Additional requirements for a depositary

18.2.13 R [deleted]

18.2.14 R A depositary that issues certificates representing certain securities must maintain adequate arrangements to safeguard certificate holders' rights to the securities to which the certificates relate, and to all rights relating to the securities and all money and benefits that it may receive in respect of them, subject only to payment of the remuneration and proper expenses of the issuer of the certificates.
An applicant for admission of certificates representing certain securities must comply with LR 3.2 and LR 3.4.4 R to LR 3.4.8 R subject to the following modifications.

An applicant for admission of certificates representing certain securities must submit a letter to the FCA setting out how it satisfies the requirements in LR 2 and LR 18.2 no later than when the first draft of a prospectus for the certificates is submitted, or if the FCA is not approving a prospectus, at a time agreed with the FCA.

In addition to the documents referred to in LR 3.4.6 R, an applicant for admission of certificates representing certain securities must keep a copy of the executed deposit agreement for six years after the admission of the relevant certificates.

[deleted]
18.4 Continuing obligations

18.4.1 An issuer of debt securities which the certificates represent must comply with the continuing obligations set out in LR 17.3 (Requirements with continuing application) in addition to the requirements of this section.

18.4.2 A UK issuer of equity shares which the certificates represent must comply with the continuing obligations set out in LR 9 (Continuing obligations) (other than in LR 9.2.6CR and LR 9.2.6DR) in addition to the requirements of this section.

18.4.3 An overseas company that is the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent must comply with:

1. the requirements of this section;
2. the continuing obligations set out in LR 14.3 (Continuing obligations) (other than in LR 14.3.2R, LR 14.3.15R, LR 14.3.25R and LR 14.3.26R), LR 18.2.8R and LR 18.4.3AR; and
3. the obligations in articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation as if it were an issuer for the purposes of those obligations and the transparency rules, subject to article 22 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

Annual accounts continuing obligations

18.4.3A (1) An issuer within LR 18.4.3R must publish its annual report and annual accounts as soon as possible after they have been approved.

(2) An issuer within LR 18.4.3R must approve and publish its annual report and accounts within six months of the end of the financial period to which they relate.

(3) The annual report and accounts must:

(a) have been prepared in accordance with the issuer's national law and, in all material respects, with national accounting standards or IAS; and

(b) have been independently audited and reported on, in accordance with:

(i) the auditing standards applicable in an EEA State; or

(ii) an equivalent auditing standard.
For the purposes of LR 18.4.3 R (2), a reference to complying with the obligations in LR 14.3 is to be read as a reference to complying with those obligations in respect of the certificates.

Change of depositary

Prior to any change of the depositary of certificates representing certain securities, the new depositary must satisfy the FCA that it meets the requirements of LR 18.2.11 R to LR 18.2.14 R.

Notification of change of depositary

An issuer of securities represented by listed certificates representing certain securities must notify a RIS of any change of depositary.

(1) The notification required by paragraph (1) must be made as soon as possible, and in any event by 7.30 a.m. on the business day following the change of depositary, and contain the following information:

(a) the name, registered office and principal administrative establishment if different from the registered office of the depositary;

(b) the date of incorporation and length of life of the depositary, except where indefinite;

(c) the legislation under which the depositary operates and the legal form which it has adopted under the legislation; and

(d) any changes to the information regarding the certificates representing certain securities.

Documents of title

An issuer must comply with the requirements in LR 9.5.15 R (Temporary documents of title) and LR 9.5.16 R (Definitive documents of title) so far as relevant to certificates representing equity securities.

Compliance with Transparency Rules

An issuer, whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules) and DTR 6 (Access to information).

An issuer that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules must comply with DTR 6.3 as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the transparency rules.
Chapter 19

Securitised derivatives: Standard listing
19.1 Application

This chapter applies to an issuer of:

(1) retail securitised derivatives;

(2) specialist securitised derivatives; and

(3) other derivative products if the FCA has specifically approved their listing under this chapter.

Other derivative products

For the purposes of this chapter, an issuer of other derivative products that have received the specific approval of the FCA to be listed under this chapter must comply with the rules applicable to an issuer of specialist securitised derivatives unless otherwise stated.

The FCA will not admit to listing, under this chapter, other derivative products that are likely to be bought and traded by investors who are not specialist investors, unless the derivative product falls within the scope of specified investments in Part III of the Regulated Activities Order.
An applicant for the admission of securitised derivatives must comply with \[\text{LR 2 (Requirements for listing - all securities)}\] and the following requirements.

**Requirements for listing: the issuer**

An applicant for the admission of securitised derivatives must either:

1. have permission under the Act to carry on its activities relating to securitised derivatives and be either a bank or a securities and futures firm;
2. if the applicant is an overseas company:
   a. be regulated by an overseas regulator responsible for the regulation of banks, securities firms or futures firms and which has a lead regulation agreement for financial supervision with the FCA; and
   b. be carrying on its activities relating to securitised derivatives within the approved scope of its business; or
3. arrange for its obligations in relation to the securitised derivatives, to be unconditionally and irrevocably guaranteed by, or benefit from an arrangement which is equivalent in its effect to such a guarantee provided by, an entity which satisfies (1) or (2).

For a securitised derivative to be listed, its underlying instrument must be traded on a regulated, regularly operating, recognised open market, unless it is:

1. a currency; or
2. an index; or
3. an interest rate; or
4. a basket of any of the above.

The FCA may modify or dispense with the requirement in \[\text{LR 19.2.3 R for other derivative products}\].
Requirements for listing: retail products

To be listed, a retail securitised derivative must:

1. satisfy the requirements set out in LR 19.2.3 R; and
2. not be a contingent liability investment.

To be listed, if a retail securitised derivative gives its holder a right of exercise, its terms and conditions must provide that:

1. for cash settled securitised derivatives that are in the money at the exercise time on the expiration date, the exercise of the securitised derivative is automatic; or
2. for physically settled securitised derivatives that are in the money at the exercise time on the expiration date, if the holder fails to deliver an exercise notice by the time stipulated in the terms and conditions, the issuer will, irrespective of the failure to exercise, pay to the holder an amount in cash in lieu of the holders failure to deliver the exercise notice, the amount and method of calculation of this amount to be determined by the issuer.
19.3 Listing applications

Listing application procedures

19.3.1 An applicant for admission of securitised derivatives must comply with:

(1) LR 3.2 (Application for admission to listing); and

(2) LR 3.4.4 R to LR 3.4.8 R.

19.3.2 In addition to the documents referred to in LR 3.4.6 R, an applicant for admission of securitised derivatives must keep a copy of the securitised derivative agreement or securitised derivative instrument or similar document for six years after the admission of the relevant securitised derivative.
19.4 Continuing obligations

Application

19.4.1 An issuer that has only securitised derivative listed is subject to the continuing obligations set out in this chapter.

19.4.2 An issuer that has both securitised derivatives and other securities listed is subject to the continuing obligations set out in this chapter and the continuing obligations that are applicable to the other securities so listed.

Admission to trading

19.4.3 (1) An issuer's listed securitised derivatives must be admitted to trading on a RIE's market for listed securities at all times.

(2) An issuer must inform the FCA in writing as soon as possible if it has:
   (a) requested a RIE to admit or re-admit any of its listed securitised derivatives to trading; or
   (b) requested a RIE to cancel or suspend trading of any of its listed securitised derivatives; or
   (c) been informed by a RIE that the trading of any of its listed securitised derivatives will be cancelled or suspended.

19.4.4 [deleted]

19.4.5 [deleted]

19.4.6 [deleted]

19.4.7 If an issue is guaranteed by an unlisted company, an issuer must submit the guarantor's accounts to the FCA.

19.4.8 [deleted]
19.4.9  [deleted]

**Settlement arrangements**

19.4.10  (1) An issuer must ensure that appropriate settlement arrangements for its *listed securitised derivatives* are in place.

(2) *Listed securitised derivatives* must be eligible for electronic settlement, which includes settlement by a relevant system, as that term is defined in the **Uncertificated Securities Regulations 1995** (SI 1995/3272).

**Disclosure requirements and transparency rules**

19.4.11  An issuer must comply with the obligations referred to under articles 17 and 18 of the **Market Abuse Regulation** as if it were an issuer for the purposes of those obligations and the **transparency rules**, subject to article 22 of the **Market Abuse Regulation**.

19.4.11A  An issuer, whose securities are admitted to trading on a *regulated market*, should consider its obligations under ■ DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), ■ DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules) and ■ DTR 6 (Access to information).

19.4.11B  For the purposes of compliance with the **transparency rules**, the FCA considers that an *issuer of securitised derivatives* should comply with ■ DTR 4, ■ DTR 5 and ■ DTR 6 as if it were an *issuer of debt securities* as defined in the **transparency rules**.

19.4.11C  An *issuer* that is not already required to comply with the **transparency rules** must comply with ■ DTR 6.3 as if it were an *issuer* for the purposes of the **transparency rules**.

**Documents of title**

19.4.12  An issuer must comply with the requirements in ■ LR 9.5.15 R (temporary documents of title) and ■ LR 9.5.16 R (definitive documents of title) so far as relevant to *securitised derivatives*.
19.5 Disclosures

19.5.1 R An issuer must submit to the FCA two copies of any document required by LR 19.5.2 R to LR 19.5.10 R at the same time as the document is issued.

19.5.2 R [deleted]

19.5.3 R [deleted]

19.5.4 R [deleted]

19.5.5 R [deleted]

19.5.6 R [deleted]

19.5.7 R An issuer must notify a RIS of all notices to holders of listed securitised derivatives no later than the date of despatch or publication.

19.5.8 R [deleted]

Underlying instruments

19.5.9 R An issuer must notify a RIS of any adjustment or modification it makes to the securitised derivative as a result of any change in or to the underlying instrument including details of the underlying event that necessitated the adjustment or modification.

Suspension of listing

19.5.10 R An issuer must inform the FCA immediately if it becomes aware that an underlying instrument that is listed or traded outside the United Kingdom has been suspended.
Note: LR 5.1.2G (7) and (8) and LR 5.4.6 G are of relevance to an issuer of securitised derivatives.
This chapter applies to an issuer of miscellaneous securities.

Miscellaneous securities include warrants and options and other similar securities.
20.2.1 An applicant for the admission of miscellaneous securities must comply with LR 2 (Requirements for listing: All securities).
20.3 Listing applications

Listing application procedures

An applicant for admission of miscellaneous securities must comply with:

(1) LR 3.2 (Application for admission to listing); and

(2) LR 3.4.4 R to LR 3.4.8 R.
20.4 Continuing obligations

Application

20.4.1 An issuer that has only miscellaneous securities listed is subject to the continuing obligations set out in this chapter.

20.4.2 An issuer that has both miscellaneous securities and other securities listed is subject to the continuing obligations set out in this chapter and the continuing obligations that are applicable to the other securities so listed.

Admission to trading

20.4.3 (1) An issuer's listed miscellaneous securities must be admitted to trading on a RIE's market for listed securities at all times.

(2) An issuer must inform the FCA in writing as soon as possible if it has:
(a) requested a RIE to admit or re-admit any of its listed miscellaneous securities to trading; or
(b) requested a RIE to cancel or suspend trading of any of its listed miscellaneous securities; or
(c) been informed by a RIE that the trading of any of its listed miscellaneous securities will be cancelled or suspended.

20.4.4 An issuer with listed miscellaneous securities must comply with LR 2.2.12 R at all times.

Disclosure requirements and transparency rules

20.4.5 An issuer must comply with the obligations referred to under articles 17 and 18 of the Market Abuse Regulation as if it were an issuer for the purposes of those obligations and the transparency rules, subject to article 22 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

20.4.6 An issuer, whose miscellaneous securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under DTR 4 (Periodic financial reporting), DTR 5 (Vote holder and issuer notification rules), DTR 6 (Access to information) and DTR 7 (Corporate governance).
An issuer that is not already required to comply with the transparency rules must comply with DTR 6.3 as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the transparency rules.

**Documents of title**

An issuer must comply with the requirements in LR 9.5.15 R (Temporary documents of title (including renounceable documents)) and LR 9.5.16 R (Definitive documents of title) so far as relevant to miscellaneous securities.
20.5 Disclosures

20.5.1 R An issuer must submit to the FCA two copies of any document required by LR 20.5.2 R to LR 20.5.3 R at the same time as the document is issued.

20.5.2 R An issuer must notify a RIS of all notices to holders of listed miscellaneous securities no later than the date of despatch or publication.

Underlying securities

20.5.3 R An issuer must notify a RIS of any adjustment or modification it makes to a miscellaneous security as a result of any change to a security over which the listed miscellaneous security carries a right to buy or subscribe.

Suspension of listing

20.5.4 R An issuer must inform the FCA immediately if it becomes aware that any security over which the listed miscellaneous security carries a right to buy or subscribe that is listed or traded outside the United Kingdom has been suspended.

20.5.5 G LR 5.1.2 G (7) and LR 5.1.2 G (8) and LR 5.4.6 G may be of relevance to an issuer of miscellaneous securities.
Chapter 21

Sovereign Controlled Commercial Companies: Premium listing
21.1 Application

21.1.1 This chapter applies to a sovereign controlled commercial company applying for, or with, a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company).

21.1.2 LR 21.2 to LR 21.5 apply in respect of a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of equity shares.

21.1.3 LR 21.6 to LR 21.10 apply in respect of a premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of certificates representing shares and apply to:

   (1) a depositary; and

   (2) an issuer of the equity shares which are represented by certificates.
21.2 Requirements for listing: Equity shares

21.2.1 To be listed, an applicant must comply with:
- LR 2 (Requirements for listing: All securities);
- LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)) except LR 6.1.1R and subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in LR 21.2.2G to LR 21.2.5R; and
- LR 21.2.6R and LR 21.2.7R.

21.2.2 For the purposes of LR 21.2.1R(2), in LR 6.4.3G factors that may indicate that an applicant does not satisfy LR 6.4.1R also include situations where an applicant has granted or may be required to grant security over its business in connection with the funding of a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.2.3 For the purposes of LR 21.2.1R(2), in LR 6.5 references to a controlling shareholder must be read as excluding a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.2.4 For the purposes of LR 21.2.1R(2), in LR 6.14.5G(2)(c) the reference to premium listing (commercial companies) must be read as a reference to premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company).

21.2.5 LR 21.2.1R(2) does not apply where:

1. the applicant meets the following conditions:
   - it has an existing premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of equity shares;
   - it is applying for the admission of equity shares of the same class as the shares that have been admitted to premium listing; and
   - it is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover; or

2. the following conditions are met:
   - a company has an existing premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of equity shares;
   - the applicant is a new holding company of the company in (a); and
the company in (a) is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover.

**21.2.6** An applicant must have a sovereign controlling shareholder.

**21.2.7** To comply with **21.2.6**, a State which is a sovereign controlling shareholder must be either:

- recognised by the government of the UK as a State at the time the application is made; or
- the UK.
21.3 Listing applications and procedures: Equity shares

21.3.1 An applicant is required to comply with §LR 3 (Listing applications: All securities).

Sponsors

21.3.2 An applicant that is seeking admission of its equity shares is required to retain a sponsor in accordance with §LR 8 (Sponsors: Premium listing).

21.3.3 An applicant must appoint a sponsor on each occasion that it makes an application for admission of equity shares which requires the production of listing particulars.
21.4 Continuing obligations: Equity shares

21.4.1 A listed company must comply with:

(1) LR 9 (Continuing obligations) subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in LR 21.4.2G to LR 21.4.4R;

(2) LR 10 (Significant transactions: Premium listing);

(3) LR 12 (Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing); and

(4) LR 13 (Contents of circulars: Premium listing) subject to the modifications set out in LR 21.4.3R.

For the purposes of LR 21.4.1R(1), in LR 9.2.2AAG factors that may indicate that a listed company does not satisfy LR 9.2.2AR also include situations where a listed company has granted or may be required to grant security over its business in connection with the funding of a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.4.2 For the purposes of LR 21.4.1R(1) and LR 21.4.1R(4), references to controlling shareholder must be read as excluding a sovereign controlling shareholder in, or for the purposes of, the following:

(1) LR 9.2.2ABR and LR 9.2.2ACG;

(2) LR 9.2.2ADR(1);

(3) LR 9.2.2BR;

(4) LR 9.2.2CR;

(5) LR 9.2.2GR and LR 9.2.2HG;

(6) LR 9.8.4 R(11);

(7) LR 9.8.4R(14); and

(8) LR 13.8.18R
For the purposes of LR 21.4.1R(1):

(1) in the second sentence of LR 9.2.21R the reference to the provisions of LR 5.4A.4R(3)(b)(ii) and LR 5.4A.4R(3)(c)(ii) must be read as a reference to the provisions of LR 5.4A.4R(3)(d)(ii);

(2) in LR 9.2.26G the reference to LR 9.2 must be read as a reference to LR 9.2 as modified by LR 21.4; and

(3) in LR 9.8.4CR the reference to LR 9.8.4R must be read as a reference to LR 9.8.4R as modified by LR 21.4.3R.

Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, the listed company should note LR 12.3.2R.

Additional requirements: sovereign controlling shareholder

A listed company must at all times have a sovereign controlling shareholder.

To comply with LR 21.4.6R, a State which is a sovereign controlling shareholder must be either:

(1) recognised by the government of the UK as a State; or

(2) the UK.

A listed company must notify the FCA without delay if it no longer complies with the continuing obligation set out in LR 21.4.6R.

Where a listed company is unable to comply with the continuing obligation set out in LR 21.4.6R, it should consider seeking a cancellation of listing or applying for a transfer of its listing category. In particular, the listed company should note LR 5.2.2G(2) and LR 5.4A.17G.

Sponsors

A listed company should consider the requirements in LR 8.2 (When a sponsor must be appointed or its guidance obtained) and LR 8.5 (Responsibilities of listed companies), subject to the modification to LR 8.2.3R in LR 21.5.3R.
21.5 Transactions with related parties: Equity shares

21.5.1 A listed company must comply with LR 11 (Related party transactions: Premium listing) subject to the modifications in LR 21.5.2R.

21.5.2 For the purposes of LR 21.5.1R, in the case of a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder:

(1) the following provisions do not apply:
   (a) LR 11.1.1AR to LR 11.1.1ER;
   (b) LR 11.1.7R(2) to LR 11.1.7R(4);
   (c) LR 11.1.7CR and LR 11.1.8G;
   (d) LR 11.1.10R(2)(b); and
   (e) LR 11.1.11R(3)(a);

(2) the following provisions are modified as follows:
   (a) LR 11.1.7AR must be read as if the words “after obtaining shareholder approval but” are omitted;
   (b) LR 11.1.9G must be read as follows:
      (i) the reference to LR 11.1.7R must be read as a reference to LR 11.1.7R as modified by LR 21.5.2R(1); and
      (ii) as if the words “and LR 11.1.8G” are omitted;
   (c) LR 11.1.11R(1) must be read as if the words “and the transactions or arrangements have not been approved by shareholders” are replaced by “and LR 11.1.11R(2) as modified by LR 21.5.2R(2)(d) has not been complied with in relation to these transactions or arrangements”; and
   (d) LR 11.1.11R(2) must be read as follows:
      (i) as if the first sentence is omitted and replaced by the following sentence “If any percentage ratio is 5% or more for the aggregated transactions or arrangements, the listed company must comply with LR 11.1.7R as modified by LR 21.5.2R(1) in respect of the latest transaction or arrangement, and details of each of the transactions or arrangements being aggregated must be included in the notification required by LR 11.1.7R(1).”; and
      (ii) as if the “Note” is omitted.
The requirement in LR 8.2.3R to obtain the guidance of a sponsor does not apply where a listed company is proposing to enter into a transaction which is, or may be, a related party transaction and the related party concerned is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, unless the related party transaction is, or may be, a purchase by the listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares.

Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, the listed company should note LR 12.3.2R.
21.6 Requirements for listing: Certificates representing shares

Issuer of equity shares is taken to be the issuer

21.6.1 If an application is made for the admission of certificates representing shares:

(1) the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent is the issuer for the purpose of the listing rules; and

(2) the application will be dealt with as if it were an application for the admission of the equity shares.

Certificates representing shares

21.6.2 For certificates representing shares to be admitted to listing, an issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent must comply with LR 21.6.3R to LR 21.6.8R.

21.6.3 An issuer must be:

(1) duly incorporated or otherwise validly established according to the relevant laws of its place of incorporation or establishment; and

(2) operating in conformity with its constitution.

[Note: article 42 of CARD]

21.6.4 For the certificates to be listed, the equity shares which the certificates represent must:

(1) conform with the law of the issuer’s place of incorporation;

(2) be duly authorised according to the requirements of the issuer’s constitution; and

(3) have any necessary statutory or other consents.

[Note: article 45 of CARD]

21.6.5 (1) For the certificates to be listed, the equity shares which the certificates represent must be freely transferable.
[Note: article 46 of CARD]

(2) For the certificates to be listed, the equity shares which the certificates represent must be fully paid and free from all liens and from any restriction on the right of transfer (except any restriction imposed for failure to comply with a notice under section 793 of the Companies Act 2006 (Notice by company requiring information about interests in its shares)).

21.6.6 G The FCA may modify LR 21.6.5R to allow partly paid equity shares if it is satisfied that their transferability is not restricted and investors have been provided with appropriate information to enable dealings in the equity shares to take place on an open and proper basis.

[Note: article 46 of CARD]

21.6.7 G The FCA may, in exceptional circumstances, modify or dispense with LR 21.6.5R where the issuer has the power to disapprove the transfer of equity shares if the FCA is satisfied that this power would not disturb the market in those equity shares.

21.6.8 R (1) For the certificates to be listed, the applicant must demonstrate that the rights attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent are capable of being exercised by the holders of the certificates as if they were the holders of the relevant equity shares.

(2) For the certificates to be listed, the applicant must demonstrate that it has arrangements in place which enable the holders of the certificates to exercise the rights attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent as if they were the holders of the relevant equity shares.

Additional requirements for the issuer

21.6.9 R For certificates representing shares to be admitted to listing, an issuer must comply with:

■ LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)) except ■ LR 6.1.1R and ■ LR 6.14.1R to ■ LR 6.15.1R and subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in ■ LR 21.6.10G to ■ LR 21.6.13R; and

■ LR 21.6.14R to ■ LR 21.6.21R.

21.6.10 G For the purposes of ■ LR 21.6.9R(1), in ■ LR 6.4G factors that may indicate that an applicant does not satisfy ■ LR 6.4.1R also include situations where an applicant has granted or may be required to grant security over its business in connection with the funding of a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.6.11 R For the purposes of ■ LR 21.6.9R(1), in ■ LR 6.5 references to a controlling shareholder must be read as excluding a sovereign controlling shareholder.
21.6.12

For the purposes of LR 21.6.9R(1), references to shares or equity shares must be read as references to certificates representing shares in the following:

1. LR 6.3.2G(2);
2. LR 6.4.2G;
3. LR 6.5.2G;
4. LR 6.6.2G;
5. LR 6.7.1R;
6. LR 6.10.1R;
7. LR 6.10.2R;
8. LR 6.10.3R(1);
9. LR 6.11.1R; and
10. LR 6.12.1R.

21.6.13

LR 21.6.9R(1) does not apply where:

1. the applicant meets the following conditions:
   (a) it has an existing premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of certificates representing shares;
   (b) it is applying for the admission of certificates representing shares of the same class as the certificates that have been admitted to premium listing; and
   (c) it is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover; or
2. the following conditions are met:
   (a) a company has an existing premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) of certificates representing shares;
   (b) the applicant is a new holding company of the company in (a); and
   (c) the company in (a) is not entering into a transaction classified as a reverse takeover.

21.6.14

If the prospectus or listing particulars for the certificates representing shares that are being admitted does not include a working capital statement which demonstrates that LR 6.7.1R is satisfied, then:

1. an applicant must prepare and publish a working capital statement which demonstrates that LR 6.7.1R is satisfied;
2. the working capital statement required by paragraph (1) must be prepared in accordance with item 3.1 of Annex 11 of the PR Regulation; and
Section 21.6: Requirements for listing: Certificates representing shares

(3) the working capital statement required by paragraph (1) must be published at the same time as the prospectus or listing particulars, as applicable.

21.6.15 A working capital statement published for the purposes of LR 21.6.14 must be published by means of a RIS.

21.6.16 An applicant must have a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.6.17 To comply with LR 21.6.16, a State which is a sovereign controlling shareholder must be either:

1. recognised by the government of the UK as a State at the time the application is made; or
2. the UK.

Certificates in public hands

21.6.18 (1) If an application is made for the admission of a class of certificates representing shares, a sufficient number of certificates must, no later than the time of admission, be distributed to the public in one or more EEA States.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), account may also be taken of holders in one or more states that are not EEA States, if the certificates are listed in the state or states.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a sufficient number of certificates will be taken to have been distributed to the public when 25% of the certificates for which application for admission has been made are in public hands.

(4) For the purposes of paragraphs (1), (2) and (3), certificates are not held in public hands if they are:

(a) held directly or indirectly by:
   a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or
   a person connected with a director of the applicant or of any of its subsidiary undertakings; or
   the trustees of any employees’ share scheme or pension fund established for the benefit of any directors and employees of the applicant and its subsidiary undertakings; or
   any person who under any agreement has a right to nominate a person to the board of directors of the applicant; or
   any person or persons in the same group or persons acting in concert who have an interest in 5% or more of the certificates of the relevant class; or...
Section 21.6: Requirements for listing: Certificates representing shares

(b) subject to a lock-up period of more than 180 calendar days.

[Note: article 48 of CARD]

(1) The FCA may modify LR 21.6.18R to accept a percentage lower than 25% if it considers that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage in view of the large number of certificates of the same class and the extent of their distribution to the public.

[Note: article 48 of CARD]

(2) In considering whether to grant a modification, the FCA may take into account the following specific factors:

(a) certificates of the same class that are held (even though they are not listed) in states that are not EEA States;

(b) the number and nature of the public holders of certificates; and

(c) in relation to premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company) whether the expected market value of the certificates in public hands at admission exceeds £100 million.

When calculating the number of certificates for the purposes of LR 21.6.18R(4)(a)(v), holdings of investment managers in the same group where investment decisions are made independently by the individual in control of the relevant fund and those decisions are unfettered by the group to which the investment manager belongs will be disregarded.

Certificates of a non-EEA company

The FCA will not admit certificates representing shares of an applicant incorporated in a non-EEA State where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is not listed either in its country of incorporation or in the country in which a majority of its equity shares are held, unless the FCA is satisfied that the absence of listing is not due to the need to protect investors.

[Note: article 51 of CARD]

Additional requirements for the certificates

(1) To be listed, the certificates representing shares must satisfy the requirements set out in LR 2.2.2R and LR 2.2.4R to LR 2.2.11R.

(2) For this purpose, in those rules references to securities must be read as references to the certificates representing shares for which application for listing is made.

To be listed, the certificates representing shares must be admitted to trading on a regulated market for listed securities operated by a RIE.

To be listed, the certificates representing shares must not impose obligations on the depositary that issues the certificates except to the extent necessary to protect the certificate holders’ rights to, and the transmission of entitlements of, the equity shares.
Additional requirements for a depositary

A depositary that issues certificates representing shares must maintain adequate arrangements to safeguard certificate holders’ rights to the equity shares to which the certificates relate, and to all rights relating to the equity shares and all money and benefits that it may receive in respect of them, subject only to payment of the remuneration and proper expenses of the issuer of the certificates.

The requirement to maintain adequate arrangements to safeguard all rights relating to the equity shares includes enabling the holders of the certificates representing shares to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares to which the certificates relate. A depositary must not vote or attempt to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares to which the certificates relate except pursuant to and in accordance with instructions from the holders of the certificates representing shares.
21.7 Listing applications and procedures: Certificates representing shares

21.7.1 An applicant for admission of certificates representing shares must comply with LR 3.2 and LR 3.4.4R to LR 3.4.6R subject to the modification and additional requirement set out in LR 21.7.2R.

21.7.2 In addition to the documents referred to in LR 3.4.6R, an applicant for admission of certificates representing shares must keep a copy of the executed deposit agreement for six years after the admission of the relevant certificates.

Sponsors

21.7.3 An applicant that is seeking admission of certificates representing shares is required to retain a sponsor in accordance with LR 8 (Sponsors: Premium listing).

21.7.4 An applicant must appoint a sponsor on each occasion that it makes an application for admission of certificates representing shares which requires the production of listing particulars.
Compliance with LR 9 (Continuing obligations)

21.8.1 R A listed company must comply with LR 9 (Continuing obligations) except:

1. LR 9.2.1R to LR 9.2.2R;
2. LR 9.2.5G to LR 9.2.6DR;
3. LR 9.2.15R to LR 9.2.15AG;
4. LR 9.2.21R to LR 9.2.22G; and
5. LR 9.2.26G; and

subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in LR 21.8.2R to LR 21.8.12R.

21.8.2 R For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, references to the listed company or the issuer must be read as references to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent in LR 9.

21.8.2A R For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, in LR 9.2.23R the reference to LR 9.2.21R should be read as a reference to LR 21.8.22R.

21.8.3 G For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, in LR 9.2.2AAG factors that may indicate that a listed company does not satisfy LR 9.2.2AR also include situations where a listed company has granted or may be required to grant security over its business in connection with the funding of a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.8.4 R For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, references to controlling shareholder must be read as excluding a sovereign controlling shareholder in, or for the purposes of, the following:

1. LR 9.2.2ABR and LR 9.2.2ACG;
2. LR 9.2.2ADR(1);
3. LR 9.2.2BR;
For the purposes of obtaining the shareholder approvals required by:

- LR 9.2.2ER;
- LR 9.2.2FR;
- LR 9.4.1R(2);
- LR 9.4.4R(2); and
- LR 9.5.10R(3)(a),

a listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of its certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent on any shareholder vote.

For the purposes of LR 9.3.11R the listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R to ensure that, where the offer is made to holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates represent, the holders of its certificates representing shares have an equal opportunity to participate in the offer.

For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, LR 9.5 is modified as follows:

1. In LR 9.5.1R(4) the equity securities which are the subject of the rights issue must be of the same class as the equity shares which are represented by the listed certificates representing shares;

2. LR 9.5.3G does not apply;

3. In LR 9.5.10R(1):
   a. the reference to a class already listed must be read as a reference to a class of equity shares which the listed certificates represent; and
   b. for the purposes of LR 9.5.10R, if the equity shares are not listed, then the middle market price of those equity shares shall be determined by reference to the middle market price of the listed certificates representing shares; and

4. A listed company must comply with the requirements in LR 9.5.15R and LR 9.5.16R so far as relevant to certificates representing shares.

For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R, in LR 9.5 the listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R to ensure that in relation to:
(1) any rights issue; or
(2) any open offer where the offer relates to the class of equity shares which the certificates represent,

the holders of its certificates representing shares have an equal opportunity to participate in the rights issue or open offer.

21.8.9 In addition to complying with LR 9.6.2R, a listed company must also forward to the FCA, for publication through the document viewing facility, two copies of all resolutions passed by the holders of the listed certificates representing shares. It must also comply with the notification requirements set out in LR 9.6.3R in relation to such resolutions.

21.8.10 For the purposes of LR 21.8.1R:

(1) in LR 9.6.4R(3) the reference to listed shares must be read as a reference to equity shares of the class which the certificates represent; and
(2) in LR 9.8.4CR the reference to LR 9.8.4R must be read as a reference to LR 9.8.4R as modified by LR 21.8.4R.

21.8.11 In addition to complying with LR 9.6.18R, a listed company must also notify a RIS as soon as possible after a meeting of the holders of the listed certificates representing shares of all resolutions passed by the holders.

21.8.12 In addition to complying with LR 9.7A.2R, a listed company must comply with the notification requirements in LR 9.7A.2R in respect of the equity shares which the certificates represent.

**Additional requirements: exercise of rights attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent**

21.8.13 (1) The rights attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent must at all times be capable of being exercised by the holders of the certificates as if they were the holders of the relevant equity shares.

(2) A listed company must at all times have in place arrangements which enable the holders of the certificates to exercise the rights attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent as if they were the holders of the relevant equity shares.

(3) Every circular which is sent by a listed company to the holders of the equity shares which the certificates represent must be sent to the holders of its certificates representing shares at the same time as the circular is despatched to the holders of those equity shares.
Additional requirements: compliance with the disclosure requirements, transparency rules and corporate governance rules

21.8.14 A listed company, whose certificates representing shares are admitted to trading on a regulated market in the United Kingdom, should consider its obligations under the disclosure requirements.

21.8.15 A listed company that is not already required to comply with the obligations referred to under article 17 of the Market Abuse Regulation must comply with those obligations as if it were an issuer for the purposes of the disclosure requirements and transparency rules subject to article 22 of the Market Abuse Regulation.

21.8.16 A listed company, whose certificates representing shares are admitted to trading on a regulated market, should consider its obligations under DTR 4 (Periodic Financial Reporting), DTR 5 (Vote Holder and Issuer Notification Rules), DTR 6 (Continuing obligations and access to information) and DTR 7 (Corporate governance).

21.8.17 A listed company that is not already required to comply with DTR 4, DTR 5 and DTR 6 (or with corresponding requirements imposed by another EEA Member State) must comply with DTR 4, DTR 5 and DTR 6 as if it were an issuer of shares for the purposes of the transparency rules.

21.8.17A A listed company that is not already required to comply with:

(1) DTR 7.3 (Related party transactions); or

(2) requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.3;

must comply with DTR 7.3 as if it were an issuer to which DTR 7.3 applies, subject to the modifications set out in LR 21.8.17BR.

21.8.17B For the purposes of LR 21.8.17AR, DTR 7.3 is modified as follows:

(1) DTR 7.3.2R must be read as if the words “has the meaning in IFRS” are replaced by:

“has the meaning:

(a) in IFRS; or

(b) where the listed company prepares annual consolidated financial statements in accordance with accounting standards which have been determined to be equivalent to IFRS by the European Commission in accordance with Commission Regulation (EC) No. 1569/2007 of 21 December 2007 establishing a mechanism for the determination of equivalence of accounting standards applied by third country issuers of securities pursuant to Directives 2003/71/EC and 2004/109/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council,

(i) in IFRS, or

(ii) in the equivalent standards determined under EU law that are applied by the listed company and which have been determined to be equivalent to IFRS
(ii) in the equivalent accounting standards in accordance with which its annual consolidated financial statements are prepared;

at the choice of the listed company.”

(2) DTR 7.3.8R(2) and (3) do not apply;

(3) DTR 7.3.9R must be read as follows:

(a) as if the words “after obtaining board approval” are replaced by “after publishing an announcement in accordance with DTR 7.3.8R(1)”; and

(b) the reference to DTR 7.3.8R must be read as a reference to DTR 7.3.8R as modified by LR 21.8.17BR(2); and

(4) in DTR 7.3.13R the references to DTR 7.3.8R must be read as references to DTR 7.3.8R as modified by LR 21.8.17BR(2).

Additional requirements: certificates in public hands and admission to trading

A listed company must comply with LR 21.6.18R at all times.

Where the FCA has modified LR 21.6.18R to accept a percentage lower than 25% on the basis that the market will operate properly with a lower percentage, but the FCA considers that in practice the market for the certificates representing shares is not operating properly, the FCA may revoke the modification in accordance with LR 1.2.1R(4).

A listed company must comply with LR 21.6.23R at all times.

A listed company must inform the FCA in writing as soon as possible if it has:

(1) requested a RIE to admit or re-admit any of its listed certificates representing shares to trading; or

(2) requested a RIE to cancel or suspend trading of any of its listed certificates representing shares; or

(3) been informed by a RIE that trading of any of its listed certificates representing shares will be cancelled or suspended.

Additional requirements: voting on matters relevant to premium listing

(1) Where pursuant to LR 21.8, LR 21.9 or LR 21.10 the provisions of LR 9.4, LR 9.5, LR 10, LR 11 or LR 12 require a shareholder vote to be taken, that vote must be decided by a resolution of the holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates that have been admitted to premium listing represent.
(2) Where pursuant to ■ LR 21.8 the provisions of ■ LR 9.2.2ER require that the resolution must in addition be approved by the independent shareholders, only:

(a) independent shareholders who hold equity shares of the class which the certificates that have been admitted to premium listing represent; and

(b) holders of certificates admitted to premium listing who would be independent shareholders within (a) if they held the equity shares which the certificates represent;

can vote.

(3) Where the provisions of ■ LR 5.2 or ■ LR 5.4A require a vote of the holders of the certificates to be taken, that vote must be decided by a resolution of the holders of the listed company’s certificates representing shares that have been admitted to premium listing.

(4) Where the provisions of ■ LR 5.2.5R(2A) or ■ LR 5.4A.4R(3)(e)(ii) require that the resolution must in addition be approved by holders of certificates other than the controlling shareholder, only holders of the listed company’s certificates representing shares that have been admitted to premium listing can vote.

21.8.23  

(1) In the case of a shareholder vote referred to in ■ LR 21.8.22R(1) the listed company is required under ■ LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of the listed certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent on any shareholder vote.

(2) The purpose of ■ LR 21.8.22R(2) is to ensure that the election or re-election of independent directors must be approved by the independent shareholders as a class. That class includes those persons whose entitlement to vote on the election of the independent directors arises as a result of their holding of certificates representing shares that have been admitted to premium listing. Accordingly, in the case of approval by the independent shareholders referred to in ■ LR 21.8.22R(2) the listed company is required under ■ LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of the listed certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent in relation to any such approval.

21.8.24  

Where the provisions of ■ LR 5.2.5R(2A) or ■ LR 5.4A.4R(3)(e)(ii) require that the resolution must in addition be approved by holders of certificates other than the controlling shareholder, the controlling shareholder will include a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.8.25  

The FCA may modify the operation of ■ LR 21.8.22R in exceptional circumstances, for example to accommodate the operation of:

(1) special share arrangements designed to protect the national interest;

(2) dual-listed company voting arrangements; and
(3) voting rights attaching to preference shares or similar securities that are in arrears.

21.8.26 Where a listed company is unable to comply with a continuing obligation set out in:

(1) LR 9.2 as modified by LR 21.8; or

(2) LR 21.8.13R to LR 21.8.25G,

it should consider seeking a cancellation of listing or applying for a transfer of its listing category. In particular, the listed company should note LR 5.2.2G(2) and LR 5.4A.16G.

Additional requirements: working capital statement

21.8.27 In relation to an application for admission of certificates representing shares of an applicant that has certificates representing shares already listed:

(1) an applicant must satisfy the FCA that it and its subsidiary undertakings (if any) have sufficient working capital available for the group’s requirements for at least the next 12 months from the date of publication of the prospectus or listing particulars for the certificates representing shares that are being admitted; and

(2) if the prospectus or listing particulars for the certificates representing shares that are being admitted does not include a working capital statement which demonstrates that the requirement under paragraph (1) is satisfied, then:

(a) an applicant must prepare and publish a working capital statement which demonstrates that the requirement under paragraph (1) is satisfied;

(b) the working capital statement required by paragraph (a) must be prepared in accordance with item 3.1 of Annex 11 of the PR Regulation; and

(c) the working capital statement required by paragraph (a) must be published at the same time as the prospectus or listing particulars, as applicable.

21.8.28 A working capital statement published for the purposes of LR 21.8.27R must be published by means of a RIS.

Additional requirements: sovereign controlling shareholder

21.8.29 A listed company must at all times have a sovereign controlling shareholder.

21.8.30 To comply with LR 21.8.29R, a State which is a sovereign controlling shareholder must be either:

(1) recognised by the government of the UK as a State; or

(2) the UK.
21.8.31  **R**  A listed company must notify the FCA without delay if it no longer complies with the continuing obligation set out in ▬LR 21.8.29R.

21.8.32  **G**  Where a listed company is unable to comply with the continuing obligation set out in ▬LR 21.8.29R, it should consider seeking a cancellation of listing or applying for a transfer of its listing category. In particular, the listed company should note ▬LR 5.2.2G(2) and ▬LR 5.4A.17G.

### Change of depositary

21.8.33  **R**  Prior to any change of the depositary of certificates representing shares, the new depositary must satisfy the FCA that it meets the requirements of ▬LR 21.6.22R to ▬LR 21.6.26G.

### Notification of change of depositary

21.8.34  **R**  (1) An issuer of equity shares represented by listed certificates representing shares must notify a RIS of any change of depositary.

(2) The notification required by paragraph (1) must be made as soon as possible and in any event by 7:30 a.m. on the business day following the change of depositary, and must contain the following information:

(a) the name, registered office and principal administrative establishment if different from the registered office of the depositary;

(b) the date of incorporation and length of life of the depositary, except where indefinite;

(c) the legislation under which the depositary operates and the legal form which it has adopted under the legislation; and

(d) any changes to the information regarding the certificates representing shares.

### Sponsors

21.8.35  **G**  A listed company should consider the requirements in ▬LR 8.2 (When a sponsor must be appointed or its guidance obtained) and ▬LR 8.5 (Responsibilities of listed companies), subject to the modification to ▬LR 8.2.3R in ▬LR 21.10.5R.
21.9 Transactions and circulars: certificates representing shares

Compliance with LR 10 (Significant transactions: Premium listing)

21.9.1 A listed company must comply with LR 10 (Significant transactions: Premium listing) subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in LR 21.9.2G to LR 21.9.9R.

21.9.2 Where a company has certificates representing shares listed, the purpose of LR 10 is also to ensure that holders of certificates representing shares:

(1) are notified of certain transactions entered into by the listed company; and

(2) have the opportunity to vote on larger proposed transactions.

21.9.3 For the purposes of LR 21.9.1R, references to the listed company or the issuer must be read as references to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent in LR 10.

21.9.4 For the purposes of LR 21.9.1R, in LR 10.2.7R(1)(b) the figure used to determine the market capitalisation of the listed company is calculated as follows:

(1) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is listed, the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are listed (excluding treasury shares); and

(2) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is not listed:

(a) by dividing the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are represented by the certificates in issue by the number of equity shares represented by the certificates; and

(b) then multiplying the result by the total number of equity shares in the class of the equity shares which the certificates represent (excluding treasury shares).

21.9.5 A listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R(3) to ensure that any circular which is sent to shareholders pursuant to LR 10.5.1R(2) or LR 10.5.4R(1)(b) is
sent to holders of its certificates representing shares at the same time as the circular is despatched to shareholders.

21.9.6 For the purposes of obtaining the prior shareholder approval required by LR 10.5.1R, a listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of its certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent on any shareholder vote.

21.9.7 For the purposes of LR 21.9.1R, in LR 10.5.5G it may also be necessary to adjourn a convened shareholder meeting if a supplementary circular cannot be sent to holders of listed certificates representing shares at least 7 days prior to the convened shareholder meeting as required by LR 13.1.9R.

21.9.8 For the purposes of LR 21.9.1R, paragraph 5R(5) of Annex 1 to LR 10 (Significant transactions: Premium listing) does not apply and, for the purposes of paragraph 5R(1) of Annex 1, the figure used to determine market capitalisation is calculated as at the close of business on the last business day before the announcement as follows:

(1) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is listed, the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are listed (excluding treasury shares); and

(2) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is not listed:

(a) by dividing the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are represented by the certificates in issue by the number of equity shares represented by the certificates; and

(b) then multiplying the result by the total number of equity shares in the class of the equity shares which the certificates represent (excluding treasury shares).

21.9.9 For the purposes of LR 21.9.1R, in paragraphs 7R(4)(a) and 7R(5)(a) of Annex 1 to LR 10 the market value of the listed company’s shares is to be calculated as follows:

(1) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is listed, the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are listed (excluding treasury shares); and

(2) where the class of equity shares which the certificates represent is not listed:

(a) by dividing the aggregate market value of all the equity shares which are represented by the certificates in issue by the number of equity shares represented by the certificates; and

(b) then multiplying the result by the total number of equity shares in the class of the equity shares which the certificates represent (excluding treasury shares).
Compliance with LR 12 (Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing)

21.9.10 R A listed company must comply with all the requirements of ■LR 12 (Dealing in own securities and treasury shares: Premium listing) subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in ■LR 21.9.11R to ■LR 21.9.17G.

21.9.11 R For the purposes of ■LR 21.9.10R, in ■LR 12:

- references to the listed company must be read as references to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent; and
- the reference in the definition of tender offer to a class of its listed equity securities must be read as a reference to a class of equity shares which the certificates represent.

21.9.12 G In relation to the requirement set out in ■LR 12.3.1R(1), the listed company is required under ■LR 21.8.13R to ensure that, where the tender offer is made to holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates represent, the holders of its certificates representing shares have an equal opportunity to participate in the tender offer.

21.9.13 G Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, the listed company should note ■LR 12.3.2R.

21.9.14 G For the purposes of ■LR 21.9.10R, in relation to the requirement set out in ■LR 12.4.2R (for purchases by the listed company of 15% or more of any class of its equity shares to be by way of a tender offer to all shareholders of that class), the listed company is required under ■LR 21.8.13R to ensure that, where the tender offer is made to holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates represent, the holders of its certificates representing shares have an equal opportunity to participate in the tender offer.

21.9.15 G For the purposes of obtaining the shareholder approval required by ■LR 12.4.2AR, a listed company is required under ■LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of its certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent on any shareholder vote.

21.9.16 R For the purposes of ■LR 21.9.10R, references to securities convertible into equity shares with a premium listing must be read as references to securities convertible into the equity shares which the certificates with a premium listing represent in the following:

1. ■LR 12.5.1R; and
2. ■LR 12.5.2R.
A listed company is required under LR 21.8.13R(3) to ensure that any circular which is sent to shareholders pursuant to LR 12.5.7R is sent to holders of its certificates representing shares at the same time as the circular is despatched to shareholders.

Compliance with LR 13 (Contents of circulars: Premium listing)

A listed company must comply with all the requirements of LR 13 (Contents of circulars: Premium listing) subject to the modifications and additional requirements set out in LR 21.9.19R to LR 21.9.22R.

For the purposes of LR 21.9.18R, in LR 13 references to the listed company or to the issuer must be read as references to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent.

A listed company must ensure that circulars it issues to:

1. holders of its listed certificates representing shares; and
2. holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates represent, comply with the requirements of LR 13 as amended by this section.

For the purposes of LR 21.9.18R, references to holders of listed equity shares must be read as references to holders of listed certificates representing share and holders of the class of equity shares which the certificates represent in the following:

1. LR 13.1.9R;
2. LR 13.2.10R; and
3. LR 13.8.8R.

For the purposes of LR 21.9.18R, in LR 13.8.18R references to controlling shareholder must be read as excluding a sovereign controlling shareholder.
21.10 Transactions with related parties: certificates representing shares

Transactions with related parties

21.10.1 A listed company must comply with LR 11 (Related party transactions: Premium listing) subject to the modifications and additional requirements in LR 21.10.2 to LR 21.10.8.

21.10.2 For the purposes of LR 21.10.1:

(1) in LR 11 references to a listed company must be read as references to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent; and

(2) in LR 11.1.4AR the reference to the company must be read as a reference to the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent.

21.10.3 For the purposes of LR 21.10.1, a listed company that is required under LR 11.1.7CR to send a supplementary circular should have regard to the guidance in LR 21.9.5.

21.10.4 In the case of a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder:

(1) the following provisions do not apply:

(a) LR 11.1.1AR to LR 11.1.1ER;
(b) LR 11.1.7R(2) to LR 11.1.7R(4);
(c) LR 11.1.7CR and LR 11.1.8G;
(d) LR 11.1.10R(2)(b); and
(e) LR 11.1.11R(3)(a);

(2) the following provisions are modified as follows:

(a) LR 11.1.7AR must be read as if the words “after obtaining shareholder approval but” are omitted;
(b) LR 11.1.9G must be read as follows:

(i) the reference to LR 11.1.7R must be read as a reference to LR 11.1.7R as modified by LR 21.10.4(1); and

(ii) as if the words “and LR 11.1.8G” are omitted;
(c) ■ LR 11.1.11R(1) must be read as if the words “and the transactions or arrangements have not been approved by shareholders” are replaced by “and ■ LR 11.1.11R(2) as modified by ■ LR 21.10.4R(2)(d) has not been complied with in relation to these transactions or arrangements”; and

(d) ■ LR 11.1.11R(2) must be read as follows:

(i) as if the first sentence is omitted and replaced by the following sentence “If any percentage ratio is 5% or more for the aggregated transactions or arrangements, the listed company must comply with ■ LR 11.1.7R as modified by ■ LR 21.10.4R(1) in respect of the latest transaction or arrangement, and details of each of the transactions or arrangements being aggregated must be included in the notification required by ■ LR 11.1.7R(1).”; and

(ii) as if the “Note” is omitted.

21.10.5 The requirement in ■ LR 8.2.3R to obtain the guidance of a sponsor does not apply where a listed company is proposing to enter into a transaction which is, or may be, a related party transaction and the related party concerned is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, unless the related party transaction is, or may be, a purchase by the listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares.

21.10.6 Where a purchase by a listed company of its own equity securities or preference shares is to be made from a related party which is a sovereign controlling shareholder or an associate of a sovereign controlling shareholder, the listed company should note ■ LR 12.3.2R.

Additional requirements

21.10.7 A listed company is required under ■ LR 21.8.13R(3) to ensure that any circular which is sent to shareholders pursuant to ■ LR 11.1.7R(2) or ■ LR 11.1.8G(2) is sent to holders of its certificates representing shares at the same time as the circular is despatched to shareholders.

21.10.8 For the purposes of obtaining the shareholder approval required by ■ LR 11.1.7R(3) (and any shareholder approval required under ■ LR 11.1.7AR), a listed company is required under ■ LR 21.8.13R to ensure that the holders of its certificates representing shares are able to exercise the votes attaching to the equity shares which the certificates represent on any shareholder vote.
1.1 Relevant definitions

Note: The following definitions relevant to the listing rules are extracted from the Glossary.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Act</td>
<td>The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admission or admission to listing</td>
<td>admission of securities to the official list</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admission to trading</td>
<td>admission of securities to trading on an RIE's market for listed securities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertisement</td>
<td>(as defined in the Prospectus Regulation) a communication with both of the following characteristics:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) relating to a specific offer to the public of securities or to an admission to trading on a regulated market; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) aiming to specifically promote the potential subscription or acquisition of securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>applicant</td>
<td>an issuer which is applying for admission of securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asset backed security</td>
<td>(as defined in the PR Regulation) securities which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) represent an interest in assets, including any rights intended to assure servicing, or the receipt or timeliness of receipts by holders of assets of amounts payable there under; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) are secured by assets and the terms of which provide for payments which relate to payments or reasonable projections of payments calculated by reference to identified or identifiable assets.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate</td>
<td>(A) in relation to a director, substantial shareholder, or person exercising significant influence, who is an individual:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) that individual's spouse, civil partner or child (together &quot;the individual's family&quot;);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) the trustees (acting as such) of any trust of which the individual or any of the individual's family is a beneficiary or discretionary object (other than a trust which is either an occupational pension scheme or an employees' share</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Relevant definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>scheme</strong> which does not, in either case, have the effect of conferring benefits on persons all or most of whom are related parties;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>any <strong>company</strong> in whose <strong>equity securities</strong> the individual or any member or members (taken together) of the individual’s family or the individual and any such member or members (taken together) are directly or indirectly interested (or have a conditional or contingent entitlement to become interested) so that they are (or would on the fulfilment of the condition or the occurrence of the contingency be) able:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) to exercise or control the exercise of 30% or more of the votes able to be cast at general meetings on all, or substantially all, matters; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) to appoint or remove <strong>directors</strong> holding a majority of voting rights at board meetings on all, or substantially all, matters;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4)</td>
<td>any partnership whether a limited partnership or <strong>limited liability partnership</strong> in which the individual or any member or members (taken together) of the individual’s family are directly or indirectly interested (or have a conditional or contingent entitlement to become interested) so that they hold or control or would on the fulfilment of the condition or the occurrence of the contingency be able to hold or control:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) a voting interest greater than 30% in the partnership; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) at least 30% of the partnership.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For the purpose of paragraph (3), if more than one <strong>director</strong> of the <strong>listed company</strong>, its <strong>parent undertaking</strong> or any of its <strong>subsidiary undertakings</strong> is interested in the <strong>equity securities</strong> of another <strong>company</strong>, then the interests of those <strong>directors</strong> and their <strong>associates</strong> will be aggregated when determining whether that company is an associate of the <strong>director</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>in relation to a <strong>substantial shareholder</strong> or <strong>person exercising significant influence</strong>, which is a <strong>company</strong>:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>any other <strong>company</strong> which is its <strong>subsidiary undertaking</strong> or parent undertaking or fellow subsidiary undertaking of the parent undertaking;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>any <strong>company</strong> whose <strong>directors</strong> are accustomed to act in accordance with the <strong>substantial shareholder's</strong> or <strong>person exercising significant influence's</strong> directions or instructions;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>any <strong>company</strong> in the capital of which the <strong>substantial shareholder</strong> or <strong>person exercising significant influence</strong> and any other <strong>company</strong> under paragraph (1) or (2) taken together, is (or would on the fulfilment of a condition or the occurrence of a contingency be) able to exercise power of the type described in paragraph (3)(a) or (b) above of this definition.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(C) when used in the context of a **controlling shareholder** who is an individual:

1. that individual’s spouse, civil partner or child (together “the individual’s family”);
2. the trustees (acting as such) of any trust of which the individual or any of the individual's family is a beneficiary or discretionary object (other than a trust which is either an *occupational pension scheme* or an *employees’ share scheme* which does not, in either case, have the effect of conferring benefits on persons all or most of whom are *controlling shareholders*);
3. any *company* in whose *equity securities* the individual or any member or members (taken together) of the individual’s family or the individual and any such member or members (taken together) are directly or indirectly interested (or have a conditional or contingent entitlement to become interested) so that they are (or would on the fulfilment of the condition or the occurrence of the contingency be) able:
   
   a. to exercise or control the exercise of 30% or more of the votes able to be cast at general meetings on all, or substantially all, matters; or
   
   b. to appoint or remove *directors* holding a majority of voting rights at board meetings on all, or substantially all, matters;
4. any partnership whether a limited partnership or *limited liability partnership* in which the individual or any member or members (taken together) of the individual’s family are directly or indirectly interested (or have a conditional or contingent entitlement to become interested) so that they hold or control or would on the fulfilment of the condition or the occurrence of the contingency be able to hold or control:
   
   a. a voting interest greater than 30% in the partnership; or
   
   b. at least 30% of the partnership.

For the purpose of paragraph (3), if more than one *controlling shareholder* of the *listed company*, its *parent undertaking* or any of its *subsidiary undertakings* is interested in the *equity securities* of another *company*, then the interests of those *controlling shareholders* and their *associates* will be aggregated when determining whether that *company* is an associate of the *controlling shareholder*.

(D) when used in the context of a **controlling shareholder** which is a company:

1. any other *company* which is its *subsidiary undertaking* or *parent undertaking* or fellow *subsidiary undertaking* of the parent undertaking;
2. any *company* whose *directors* are accustomed to act in accordance with the *controlling shareholder’s* directions or instructions;
3. any *company* in the capital of which the *controlling shareholder* and any other *company* under paragraph (1) or (2) taken together, is (or would on the fulfilment of a condi-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>authorised person</strong></th>
<th>(in accordance with <a href="#">section 31</a> of the Act (Authorised persons)) one of the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>a person who has a Part 4A permission to carry on one or more regulated activities;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>an incoming EEA firm;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>an incoming Treaty firm;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>a UCITS qualifier;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>an ICVC;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>the Society of Lloyd's.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bank</strong></td>
<td>(a) a firm with a Part 4A permission which includes accepting deposits, and:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) which is a credit institution; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) whose Part 4A permission includes a requirement that it comply with the rules in GENPRU and BIPRU relating to banks; but which is not a building society, a friendly society or a credit union;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>an EEA bank which is a full credit institution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>base prospectus</strong></td>
<td>a base prospectus referred to in article 8 of the <a href="#">Prospectus Regulation</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>body corporate</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with <a href="#">section 417(1)</a> of the Act (Definitions)) any body corporate, including a body corporate constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>book value of property</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to a <a href="#">property company</a>) the value of a property (which is not classified as a net current asset) before the deduction of mortgages or borrowings as shown in the company’s latest annual report and accounts.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>break fee arrangement</strong></td>
<td>an arrangement falling within the description in LR 10.2.6A R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>business day</strong></td>
<td>(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definition</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARD</td>
<td>Consolidated Admissions and Reporting Directive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate representing certain securities</td>
<td>the investment specified in article 80 of the Regulated Activities Order (Certificates representing certain securities), which is in summary: a certificate or other instrument which confers contractual or property rights (other than rights consisting of options):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>in respect of any share, debenture, alternative debenture, government and public security or warrant held by a person other than the person on whom the rights are conferred by the certificate or instrument; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>the transfer of which may be effected without requiring the consent of that person;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but excluding any certificate or other instrument which confers rights in respect of two or more investments issued by different persons or in respect of two or more different government and public securities issued by the same person.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate representing debt securities</td>
<td>a certificate representing certain securities where the certificate or other instrument confers rights in respect of debentures, alternative debentures, or government and public securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate representing equity securities</td>
<td>a certificate representing certain securities where the certificate or other instrument confers rights in respect of equity securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certificate representing shares</td>
<td>a certificate representing certain securities where the certificate or other instrument confers rights in respect of equity shares.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charge</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives) means any payment identified under the terms and conditions of the securitised derivatives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese wall</td>
<td>an arrangement that requires information held by a person in the course of carrying on one part of its business to be withheld from, or not to be used for, persons with or for whom it acts in the course of carrying on another part of its business.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circular</td>
<td>any document issued to holders of listed securities including notices of meetings but excluding prospectuses, listing particulars, annual reports and accounts, interim reports, proxy cards and dividend or interest vouchers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class</td>
<td>securities the rights attaching to which are or will be identical and which form a single issue or issues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 1 acquisition</td>
<td>a class 1 transaction that involves an acquisition by the relevant listed company or its subsidiary undertaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 1 circular</td>
<td>a circular relating to a class 1 transaction or a transaction which must comply with the requirements of a class 1 transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 1 disposal</td>
<td>a class 1 transaction that consists of a disposal by the relevant listed company or its subsidiary undertaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 1 transaction</td>
<td>a transaction classified as a class 1 transaction under LR 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class 2 transaction</td>
<td>a transaction classified as a class 2 transaction under LR 10.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class tests</td>
<td>the tests set out in LR 10 Annex 1 (and for certain specialist companies, those tests as modified or added to by LR 10.7), which are used to determine how a transaction is to be classified for the purposes of the listing rules.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Relevant definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>closed-ended</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to investment entities) an <em>investment company</em> which is not an <em>open-ended investment company</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>closed-ended investment fund</strong></td>
<td>an entity:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>which is an undertaking with limited liability, including a company, limited partnership, or <em>limited liability partnership</em>; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>whose primary object is investing and managing its assets (including pooled funds contributed by holders of its <em>listed securities</em>):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>in property of any description; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>with a view to spreading investment risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COBS</strong></td>
<td>the Conduct of Business sourcebook, from 1 November 2007.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Combined Code</strong></td>
<td>in relation to an <em>issuer</em> the Combined Code on Corporate Governance published in June 2008 by the Financial Reporting Council.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>company</strong></td>
<td>any <em>body corporate</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>competent authority</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to the functions referred to in <a href="#">Part VI</a> of the Act):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>the authority designated under Schedule 8 to the Act (transfer of functions under Part VI (Official listing)) as responsible for performing those functions under the Act; for the time being the <em>FCA</em> in its capacity as such; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>an authority exercising functions corresponding to those functions under the laws of another <em>EEA State</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>connected client</strong></td>
<td>in relation to a <em>sponsor</em> or securities house, any client of the sponsor or securities house who is:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>a <em>partner, director, employee or controller</em> (as defined in section 422 of the Act) of the sponsor or securities house or of an undertaking described in paragraph (d);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>the spouse, civil partner or child of any individual described in paragraph (a);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>a <em>person</em> in his capacity as trustee of a private trust (other than a pension scheme or an employees' share scheme) the beneficiaries of which include any <em>person</em> described in paragraph (a) or (b); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>an undertaking which in relation to the sponsor or securities house is a group undertaking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>connected person</strong></td>
<td>(in DTR and LR in relation to a <em>person discharging managerial responsibilities</em> within an <em>issuer</em>) has the meaning given to “person closely associated” in article 3(1)(26) of the Market Abuse Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Consolidated Ad</strong></td>
<td>Directive of the European Parliament and of the Council on the admission of securities to official stock exchange listing and on</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>missions and Reporting Directive</strong></td>
<td>information to be published on those securities (No 2001/34/EC).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>constitution</strong></td>
<td>memorandum and articles of association or equivalent constitutional document.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>contingent liability investment</strong></td>
<td>a derivative under the terms of which the client will or may be liable to make further payments (other than charges, and whether or not secured by margin) when the transaction fails to be completed or upon the earlier closing out of his position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>contract of significance</strong></td>
<td>a contract which represents in amount or value (or annual amount or value) a sum equal to 1% or more, calculated on a group basis where relevant, of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>in the case of a capital transaction or a transaction of which the principal purpose or effect is the granting of credit, the aggregate of the group’s share capital and reserves; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>in other cases, the total annual purchases, sales, payments or receipts, as the case may be, of the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>controlling shareholder</strong></td>
<td>means any person who exercises or controls on their own or together with any person with whom they are acting in concert, 30% or more of the votes able to be cast on all or substantially all matters at general meetings of the company. For the purposes of calculating voting rights, the following voting rights are to be disregarded:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>any voting rights which such a person exercises (or controls the exercise of) independently in its capacity as: bare trustee, investment manager, collective investment undertaking or a long-term insurer in respect of its linked long-term business if no associate of that person interferes by giving direct or indirect instructions, or in any other way, in the exercise of such voting rights (except to the extent any such person confers or collaborates with such an associate which also acts in its capacity as investment manager, collective investment undertaking or long-term insurer); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>any voting rights which a person may hold (or control the exercise of) solely in relation to the direct performance, by way of business, of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>underwriting the issue or sale of securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>placing securities, where the person provides a firm commitment to acquire any securities which it does not place; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>acquiring securities from existing shareholders or the issuer pursuant to an agreement to procure third-party purchases of securities;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and where the conditions below are satisfied:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>the activities set out in (2)(a) to (c) are performed in the ordinary course of business;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>the securities to which the voting rights attach are held for a consecutive period of 5 trading days or less, beginning with the first trading day on which the securities are held;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii)</td>
<td>the voting rights are not exercised within the period the securities are held; and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Relevant definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>convertible securities</td>
<td>a security which is:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>convertible into, or exchangeable for, other securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>accompanied by a warrant or option to subscribe for or purchase other securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deal</td>
<td>a dealing transaction;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dealing</td>
<td>(in accordance with paragraph 2 of Schedule 2 to the Act (Regulated activities)) buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments or offering or agreeing to do so, either as principal or as an agent, including, in the case of an investment which is a contract of insurance, carrying out the contract.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt security</td>
<td>debentures, alternative debentures, debenture stock, loan stock, bonds, certificates of deposit or any other instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deferred bonus</td>
<td>any arrangement pursuant to the terms of which an employee or director may receive a bonus (including cash or any security) in respect of service and/or performance in a period not exceeding the length of the relevant financial year notwithstanding that the bonus may, subject only to the person remaining a director or employee of the group, be receivable by the person after the end of the period to which the award relates.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>defined benefit scheme depositary</td>
<td>in relation to a director, means a pension scheme which is not a money purchase scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a person that issues certificates representing certain securities that have been admitted to listing or are the subject of an application for admission to listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEPP designated professional body</td>
<td>the Decision Procedure and Penalties manual a professional body designated by the Treasury under section 326 of the Act (Designation of professional bodies) for the purposes of Part XX of the Act (Provision of Financial Services by Members of the Professions); as at 21 June 2001 the following professional bodies have been designated in the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Designated Professional Bodies) Order 2001 (SI 2001/1225):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) The Law Society (England and Wales);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) The Law Society of Scotland;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) The Law Society of Northern Ireland;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) The Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) The Institute of Chartered Accountants of Scotland;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) The Institute of Chartered Accountants in Ireland;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(g) The Association of Chartered Certified Accountants;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(h) The Institute of Actuaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director</td>
<td>(in accordance with section 417(1)(a) of the Act) a person occupying in relation to it the position of a director (by whatever name called) and, in relation to an issuer which is not a body corporate, a person with corresponding powers and duties.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>disclosure guidance</strong></td>
<td>the guidance contained in DTR 1 to 3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>disclosure requirements</strong></td>
<td>articles 17, 18 and 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>document</strong></td>
<td>any piece of recorded information, including (in accordance with section 417(1) of the Act (Interpretation)) information recorded in any form; in relation to information recorded otherwise than in legible form, references to its production include references to producing a copy of the information in legible form.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>document viewing facility</strong></td>
<td>a location identified on the FCA website where the public can inspect documents referred to in the listing rules as being documents to be made available at the document viewing facility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DTR</strong></td>
<td>the Disclosure Guidance and Transparency Rules sourcebook containing the disclosure guidance, transparency rules, corporate governance rules and the rules relating to primary information providers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EEA State</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with paragraph 8 of Schedule 3 to the Act (EEA Passport Rights)) a State which is a contracting party to the agreement on the European Economic Area signed at Oporto on 2 May 1992, as it has effect for the time being; as at 1 May 2004, the following are the EEA States: Austria, Belgium, Cyprus, the Czech Republic, Denmark, Estonia, Finland, France, Germany, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Ireland, Italy, Latvia, Liechtenstein, Lithuania, Luxembourg, Malta, the Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, the Slovak Republic, Slovenia, Spain, Sweden and the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EG employee</strong></td>
<td>the Enforcement Guide an individual:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) who is employed or appointed by a person in connection with that person’s business, whether under a contract of service or for services or otherwise; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) whose services, under an arrangement between that person and a third party, are placed at the disposal and under the control of that person;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>but excluding an appointed representative or, where applicable, a tied agent of that person.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>employees’ share scheme</strong></td>
<td>has the same meaning as in section 1166 of the Companies Act 2006.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>equity security</strong></td>
<td>equity shares and securities convertible into equity shares.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>equity share</strong></td>
<td>shares comprised in a company’s equity share capital.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>equity share capital</strong></td>
<td>(for a company), its issued share capital excluding any part of that capital which, neither as respects dividends nor as respects capital, carries any right to participate beyond a specified amount in a distribution.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ESMA</strong></td>
<td>European Securities and Markets Authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ESMA Pro-</strong></td>
<td>the ESMA update of the CESR recommendations: The consistent...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise notice</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), a document that notifies the issuer of a holder’s intention to exercise its rights under the securitised derivative.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise price</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), the price stipulated by the issuer at which the holder can buy or sell the underlying instrument from or to the issuer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exercise time</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), the time stipulated by the issuer by which the holder must exercise their rights.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expiration date</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), the date stipulated by the issuer on which the holder’s rights in respect of the securitised derivative ends.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>external management company</td>
<td>(in LR and PRR) has the meaning in PRR 5.3.3R. (i.e., in relation to an issuer that is a company which is not a collective investment undertaking, a person who is appointed by the issuer (whether under a contract of service, a contract for services or any other commercial arrangement) to perform functions that would ordinarily be performed by officers of the issuer and to make recommendations in relation to strategic matters).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extraction</td>
<td>(in relation to mineral companies), includes mining, quarrying or similar activities and the reworking of mine tailings or waste dumps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FCA</td>
<td>the Financial Conduct Authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>final terms</td>
<td>the document containing the final terms of each issue which is intended to be listed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>financial information table</td>
<td>financial information presented in a tabular form that covers the reporting period set out in LR 13.5.13 R in relation to the entities set out in LR 13.5.14 R, and to the extent relevant LR 13.5.17A R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group</td>
<td>(1) except in LR 6.4.3G, LR 6.5.3G, LR 6.14.3R, LR 6.14.4G, LR 8.7.8R (10), LR 14.2.2 R, LR 14.2.3A G, LR 18.2.8 R and LR 18.2.9A G , an issuer and its subsidiary undertakings (if any); and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guarantee</td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), either:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) a guarantee given in accordance with LR 19.2.2 R (3)(if any); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) any other guarantee of the issue of securitised derivatives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guidance</td>
<td>guidance given by the FCA under the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Handbook</td>
<td>the FCA’s Handbook of rules and guidance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holding company</td>
<td>(as defined in section 1159(1) of the Companies Act 2006 (Meaning of “subsidiary” etc) (in relation to another body corporate (“S”)) a body corporate which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) holds a majority of the voting rights in S; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) is a member of S and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of its board of directors; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) is a member of S and controls alone, under an agreement with other shareholders and members, a majority of the voting rights in S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Home Member State or Home State</strong></td>
<td>(as defined in section 102C of the Act) in relation to an issuer of transferable securities, the EEA State which is the &quot;home Member State&quot; for the purposes of the Prospectus Regulation (which is to be determined in accordance with article 2(m) of that regulation).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Host Member State or Host State</strong></td>
<td>(as defined in article 2(m) of the Prospectus Regulation) the State where an offer of securities to the public is made or admission to trading is sought, when different from the home Member State.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IAS</strong></td>
<td>International Accounting Standards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Independent director</strong></td>
<td>a director whom an applicant or listed company has determined to be independent under the UK Corporate Governance Code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Independent shareholder</strong></td>
<td>any person entitled to vote on the election of directors of a listed company that is not a controlling shareholder of the listed company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Information society service</strong></td>
<td>an information society service, as defined by article 2(a) of the E-Commerce Directive and article 1(2) of the Technical Standards and Regulations Directive (98/34/EC), which is in summary any service normally provided for remuneration, at a distance, by means of electronic equipment for the processing (including the digital compression) and storage of data at the individual request of a service recipient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inside information</strong></td>
<td>as described in article 7 of the Market Abuse Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Intermediaries offer</strong></td>
<td>a marketing of securities already or not yet in issue, by means of an offer by, or on behalf of, the issuer to intermediaries for them to allocate to their own clients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>International Accounting Standards</strong></td>
<td>international accounting standards within the meaning of EC Regulation No 1606/2002 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 19 July 2002 as adopted from time to time by the European Commission in accordance with that Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>In the money</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Investment entity</strong></td>
<td>an entity whose primary object is investing and managing its assets with a view to spreading or otherwise managing investment risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Investment manager</strong></td>
<td>a person who, on behalf of a client, manages investments and is not a wholly-owned subsidiary of the client.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Investment trust</strong></td>
<td>a company which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(a)</strong></td>
<td>is approved by the Commissioners for HM Revenue and Customs under sections 1158 and 1159 of the Corporation Tax Act 2010 (or, in the case of a newly formed company, has declared its intention to conduct its affairs so as to obtain such approval); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(b)</strong></td>
<td>is resident in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom and would qualify for such approval if resident in the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>issuer</strong></td>
<td>any company or other legal person or undertaking (including a public sector issuer), any class of whose securities has been admitted to listing or is the subject of an application for admission to listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>limited liability partnership</strong></td>
<td>(a) a body corporate incorporated under the Limited Liability Partnerships Act 2000; (b) a body corporate incorporated under legislation having the equivalent effect to the Limited Liability Partnerships Act 2000;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>list of sponsors</strong></td>
<td>the list of sponsors maintained by the FCA in accordance with section 88(3)(a) of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listed company</strong></td>
<td>a company that has any class of its securities listed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listing particulars</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with section 79(2) of the Act), a document in such form and containing such information as may be specified in listing rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>listing rules</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with sections 73A(1) and 73A(2) of the Act) rules relating to admission to the official list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>London Stock Exchange</strong></td>
<td>London Stock Exchange Plc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>long-term incentive scheme</strong></td>
<td>any arrangement (other than a retirement benefit plan, a deferred bonus or any other arrangement that is an element of an executive director’s remuneration package) which may involve the receipt of any asset (including cash or any security) by a director or employee of the group: (1) which includes one or more conditions in respect of service and/or performance to be satisfied over more than one financial year; and (2) pursuant to which the group may incur (other than in relation to the establishment and administration of the arrangement) either cost or a liability, whether actual or contingent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>LR</strong></td>
<td>the sourcebook containing the listing rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>major subsidiary undertaking</strong></td>
<td>a subsidiary undertaking that represents 25% or more of the aggregate of the gross assets or profits (after deducting all charges except taxation) of the group.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>member</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to a profession) a person who is entitled to practise that profession and, in practising it, is subject to the rules of the relevant designated professional body, whether or not he is a member of that body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mineral company</strong></td>
<td>a company or group, whose principal activity is, or is planned to be, the extraction of mineral resources (which may or may not include exploration for mineral resources).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>mineral expert’s report</strong></td>
<td>a competent person’s report prepared in accordance with paragraph 133 of the ESMA Prospectus Recommendations.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Relevant definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>mineral resources</strong></td>
<td>Include metallic and non-metallic ores, mineral concentrates, industrial minerals, construction aggregates, mineral oils, natural gases, hydrocarbons and solid fuels including coal.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>miscellaneous securities</strong></td>
<td>Securities which are not:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Shares; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>Debt securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>Asset backed securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>Certificates representing debt securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>Convertible securities which convert to debt securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>Convertible securities which convert to equity securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td>Convertible securities which are exchangeable for securities of another company; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h)</td>
<td>Certificates representing certain securities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>Securitised derivatives.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>modified report</strong></td>
<td>An accountant’s or auditor’s report:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>In which the opinion is modified; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>Which contains an emphasis-of-matter paragraph.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>money purchase scheme</strong></td>
<td>In relation to a director, means a pension scheme under which all of the benefits that may become payable to or in respect of the director are money purchase benefits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>net annual rent</strong></td>
<td>(In relation to a property) the current income or income estimated by the valuer:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>Ignoring any special receipts or deductions arising from the property;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>Excluding Value Added Tax and before taxation (including tax on profits and any allowances for interest on capital or loans); and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>After making deductions for superior rents (but not for amortisation) and any disbursements including, if appropriate, expenses of managing the property and allowances to maintain it in a condition to command its rent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>non-EEA State</strong></td>
<td>A country or state that is not an EEA State.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OECD state guaranteed issuer</strong></td>
<td>An issuer of debt securities whose obligations in relation to those securities have been guaranteed by a member state of the OECD.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>offer</strong></td>
<td>An offer of transferable securities to the public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>offer for sale</strong></td>
<td>An invitation to the public by, or on behalf of, a third party to purchase securities of the issuer already in issue or allotted (and may be in the form of an invitation to tender at or above a stated minimum price).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>offer for subscription</strong></td>
<td>An invitation to the public by, or on behalf of, an issuer to subscribe for securities of the issuer not yet in issue or allotted (and may be in the form of an invitation to tender at or above a stated minimum price).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **offer of transferable** | (As defined in the Prospectus Regulation) a communication to persons in any form and by any means, presenting sufficient informa-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>securities to the public</td>
<td>formation on the terms of the offer and the securities to be offered, so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe for those securities. This definition also applies to the placing of securities through financial intermediaries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offeror</td>
<td>(a) in LR 5.2.10 R to LR 5.2.11D R, an offeror as defined in the Takeover Code; and (b) elsewhere in LR, a person who makes an offer of transferable securities to the public.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>official list</td>
<td>the list maintained by the FCA in accordance with section 74(1) of the Act for the purposes of Part VI of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open-ended investment company</td>
<td>as defined in section 236 of the Act (Open-ended investment companies).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open offer</td>
<td>an invitation to existing securities holders to subscribe or purchase securities in proportion to their holdings, which is not made by means of a renounceable letter (or other negotiable document).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operational objectives</td>
<td>as defined in section 1B(3) of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option</td>
<td>the investment, specified in article 83 of the Regulated Activities Order (Options), which is an option to acquire or dispose of: (a) a designated investment (other than a P2P agreement, an option); or (b) currency of the United Kingdom or of any other country or territory; or (c) palladium, platinum, gold or silver; or (d) an option to acquire or dispose of an option specified in (a), (b) or (c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas</td>
<td>outside the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas company</td>
<td>a company incorporated outside the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas investment exchange</td>
<td>an investment exchange which has neither its head office nor its registered office in the United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent undertaking</td>
<td>as defined in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 6 rules</td>
<td>(in accordance with section 73A(1) of the Act) rules made for the purposes of Part 6 of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>percentage ratio</td>
<td>(in relation to a transaction) the figure, expressed as a percentage, that results from applying a calculation under a class test to the transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>(in accordance with the Interpretation Act 1978) any person, including a body of persons corporate or unincorporate (that is, a natural person, a legal person and, for example, a partnership).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person discharging managerial responsibilities</td>
<td>as defined in article 3(1)(25) of the Market Abuse Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person exercising significant influence</td>
<td>in relation to a listed company, a person or entity which exercises significant influence over that listed company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placing</td>
<td>a marketing of securities already in issue but not listed or not yet in issue, to specified persons or clients of the sponsor or any securities house assisting in the placing, which does not involve an offer to the public or to existing holders of the issuer’s securities generally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preference share</td>
<td>a share conferring preference as to income or return of capital which does not form part of the equity share capital of a company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>premium listing</td>
<td>(a) in relation to equity shares (other than those of a closed-ended investment fund or of an open-ended investment company or of a sovereign controlled commercial company that is required to comply with the requirements in LR 21), means a listing where the issuer is required to comply with those requirements in LR 6 (Additional requirements for premium listing (commercial company)) and the other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) in relation to equity shares of a closed-ended investment fund, means a listing where the issuer is required to comply with the requirements in LR 15 (Closed-Ended Investment Funds: Premium listing) and other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) in relation to equity shares of an open-ended investment company, means a listing where the issuer is required to comply with LR 16 (Open-ended investment companies: Premium listing) and other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) in relation to equity shares of a sovereign controlled commercial company, means a listing where the issuer is required to comply with the requirements in LR 21 (Sovereign controlled commercial companies: Premium listing) and other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) in relation to certificates representing shares of a sovereign controlled commercial company, means a listing where the issuer is required to comply with the requirements in LR 21 (Sovereign controlled commercial companies: Premium listing) and other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Premium listing</strong> (commercial company)</td>
<td>rules that are expressed to apply to such securities with a premium listing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company)</strong></td>
<td>a premium listing of equity shares (other than those of a closed-ended investment fund or of an open-ended investment company or of a sovereign controlled commercial company that is required to comply with the requirements in LR 21).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) premium listing of:</td>
<td>(a) equity shares (other than those of a closed-ended investment fund or of an open-ended investment company); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) certificates representing shares,</td>
<td>(b) certificates representing shares,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>where the issuer of the equity shares or, in the case of certificates representing shares, the issuer of the equity shares which the certificates represent is a sovereign controlled commercial company and is required to comply with the requirements in LR 21 and other requirements in the listing rules that are expressed to apply to securities in this category.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Premium listing (investment company)</strong></td>
<td>a premium listing of equity shares of a closed-ended investment fund or of an open-ended investment company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Primary information provider probable reserves</strong></td>
<td>a person approved by the FCA under section 89P of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) in respect of mineral companies primarily involved in the extraction of oil and gas resources, those reserves which are not yet proven but which, on the available evidence and taking into account technical and economic factors, have a better than 50% chance of being produced; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) in respect of mineral companies other than those primarily involved in the extraction of oil and gas resources, those measured and/or indicated mineral resources, which are not yet proven but of which detailed technical and economic studies have demonstrated that extraction can be justified at the time of the determination and under specified economic conditions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Profit estimate</strong></td>
<td>(as defined in the PR Regulation) a profit forecast for a financial period which has expired and for which results have not yet been published.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Profit forecast</strong></td>
<td>(as defined in the PR Regulation) a form of words which expressly states or by implication indicates a figure or a minimum or maximum figure for the likely level of profits or losses for the current financial period and/or financial periods subsequent to that period, or contains data from which a calculation of such a figure for future profits or losses may be made, even if no particular figure is mentioned and the word “profit” is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property</strong></td>
<td>freehold, heritable or leasehold property.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Property company</strong></td>
<td>a company primarily engaged in property activities including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) the holding of properties (directly or indirectly) for letting and retention as investments;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) the development of properties for letting and retention as investments;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Relevant definitions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>property valuation report</strong></th>
<th>a property valuation report prepared by an independent expert in accordance with:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>(1)</strong></td>
<td>for an <em>issuer</em> incorporated in the <em>United Kingdom</em>, the Channel Islands or the Isle of Man, the Appraisal and Valuation Standards (5th edition) issued by the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(2)</strong></td>
<td>for an <em>issuer</em> incorporated in any other place, either the standards referred to in paragraph (1) of this definition or the International Valuation Standards (7th edition) issued by the International Valuation Standards Committee.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **prospectus** | a prospectus required under the *Prospectus Regulation*. |
| **prospectus rules** | (as defined in section 73A(4) of the Act) rules expressed to relate to transferable securities. |

#### Proven reserves

| **(1)** | in respect of *mineral companies* primarily involved in the extraction of oil and gas resources, those reserves which, on the available evidence and taking into account technical and economic factors, have a better than 90% chance of being produced; and |
| **(2)** | in respect of *mineral companies* other than those primarily involved in the extraction of oil and gas resources, those measured *mineral resources* of which detailed technical and economic studies have demonstrated that extraction can be justified at the time of the determination, and under specified economic conditions. |

#### PRR

the Prospectus Regulation Rules sourcebook.

#### PR Regulation

Regulation number 2019/980 of the European Commission.

#### Public international body

the African Development Bank, the Asian Development Bank, the Caribbean Development Bank, the Council of Europe Development Bank, the European Atomic Energy Community, the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the European Company for the Financing of Railroad Stock, the EU, the European Investment Bank, the Inter-American Development Bank, the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development, the International Finance Corporation, the International Monetary Fund, the Nordic Investment Bank.

#### Public sector issuer

states and their regional and local authorities, state monopolies, state finance organisations, public international bodies, statutory bodies and OECD state guaranteed issuers.

#### Recognised scheme

a scheme recognised under:

| **(a)** | section 264 of the Act (Schemes constituted in other EEA States); or |
| **(b)** | [deleted] |
| **(c)** | section 272 of the Act (Individually recognised overseas schemes). |

#### Registration document

a registration document referred to in article 6(3) of the *Prospectus Regulation*. 

---
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>regulated market</td>
<td>a multilateral system operated and/or managed by a market operator, which brings together or facilitates the bringing together of multiple third-party buying and selling interests in financial instruments - in the system and in accordance with its non-discretionary rules - in a way that results in a contract, in respect of the financial instruments admitted to trading under its rules and/or systems, and which is authorised and functions regularly and in accordance with Title III of MiFID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regulatory information service or RIS</td>
<td>(a) a primary information provider; or (b) an incoming information society service that has its establishment in an EEA State other than the United Kingdom and that disseminates regulated information in accordance with the minimum standards set out in article 12 of the TD implementing Directive. (c) [deleted]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>related party</td>
<td>as defined in LR 11.1.4 R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>related party circular</td>
<td>a circular relating to a related party transaction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>related party transaction</td>
<td>as defined in LR 11.1.5 R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retail securitised derivative</td>
<td>a securitised derivative which is not a specialist securitised derivative; in this definition, a &quot;specialist securitised derivative&quot; is a securitised derivative which, in accordance with the listing rules, is required to be admitted to listing with a clear statement on any disclosure document that the issue is intended for a purchase by only investors who are particularly knowledgeable in investment matters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reverse takeover</td>
<td>a transaction classified as a reverse takeover under LR 5.6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RIE</td>
<td>recognised investment exchange.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rights issue</td>
<td>an offer to existing security holders to subscribe or purchase further securities in proportion to their holdings made by means of the issue of a renounceable letter (or other negotiable document) which may be traded (as “nil paid” rights) for a period before payment for the securities is due.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule</td>
<td>(in accordance with section 417(1) of the Act (Definitions)) a rule made by the FCA under the Act, including: (a) a Principle; and (b) an evidential provision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scientific research based company</td>
<td>a company primarily involved in the laboratory research and development of chemical or biological products or processes or any other similar innovative science based company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>securities note</strong></td>
<td>a securities note referred to in article 6(3) of the Prospectus Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>securitised derivative</strong></td>
<td>an option or contract for differences which, in either case, is listed under LR 19 (including such an option or contract for differences which is also a debenture).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>security</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with section 102A of the Act) anything which has been, or may be admitted to the official list.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>settlement price</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives), the reference price or prices of the underlying instrument or instruments stipulated by the issuer for the purposes of calculating its obligations to the holder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shadow director</strong></td>
<td>as in sub-paragraph (b) of the definition of director in section 417(1) of the Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>share</strong></td>
<td>(in accordance with section 540(1) of the Companies Act 2006) a share in the share capital of a company, and includes:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) stock (except where a distinction between shares and stock is express or implied); and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) preference shares.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shell company</strong></td>
<td>as defined in LR 5.6.5AR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>specialist investor</strong></td>
<td>an investor who is particularly knowledgeable in investment matters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>specialist securities</strong></td>
<td>securities which, because of their nature, are normally bought and traded by a limited number of investors who are particularly knowledgeable in investment matters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>specialist securitised derivative</strong></td>
<td>a securitised derivative which because of its nature is normally bought and traded by a limited number of investors who are particularly knowledgeable in investment matters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>specified investment</strong></td>
<td>any of the following investments specified in Part III of the Regulated Activities Order (Specified Investments):</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) deposit (article 74);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(aa) electronic money (article 74A);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) contract of insurance (article 75); for the purposes of the permission regime, this is sub-divided into:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) general insurance contract;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) long-term insurance contract;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and then further sub-divided into classes of contract of insurance;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) share (article 76);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) debenture (article 77);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(da) alternative debenture (article 77A);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) government and public security (article 78);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) warrant (article 79);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(g) certificate representing certain securities (article 80);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(h) unit (article 81);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) stakeholder pension scheme (article 82);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ia) emissions auction product (article 82A);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(j) option (article 83); for the purposes of the permission regime, this is sub-divided into:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) option (excluding a commodity option and an option on a commodity future);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relevant definitions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) commodity option and an option on a commodity future;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) future (article 84); for the purposes of the permission regime, this is sub-divided into: (i) future (excluding a commodity future and a rolling spot forex contract); (ii) commodity future; (iii) rolling spot forex contract;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) contract for differences (article 85); for the purposes of the permission regime, this is sub-divided into: (i) contract for differences (excluding a spread bet and a rolling spot forex contract); (ii) spread bet; (iii) rolling spot forex contract;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(m) underwriting capacity of a Lloyd's syndicate (article 86(1));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(n) membership of a Lloyd's syndicate (article 86(2));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(o) funeral plan contract (article 87);</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(oa) regulated mortgage contract (article 61(3));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ob) home reversion plan (article 63B(3));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(oc) home purchase plan (article 63F(3));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(od) regulated sale and rent back agreement (article 63J(3));</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(p) rights to or interests in investments (article 89).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**sponsor**

a person approved, under section 88 of the Act by the FCA, as a sponsor.

**sponsor declaration**

a declaration submitted by a sponsor to the FCA as required under LR 8.4.3 R (Application for listing), LR 8.4.9 R (Further application for listing), LR 8.4.13 R (Production of circular) or LR 8.4.14 R (Transfer between listing category).

**sponsor service**

a service relating to a matter referred to in LR 8.2 that a sponsor provides or is requested or appointed to provide including preparatory work that a sponsor may undertake before a decision is taken as to whether or not it will act as sponsor for a listed company or applicant or in relation to a particular transaction, and including all the sponsor’s communications with the FCA in connection with the service. But nothing in this definition is to be taken as requiring a sponsor when requested to agree to act as a sponsor for a company or in relation to a transaction.

in relation to securities, means a listing that is not a premium listing.

**standard listing**

a standard listing of shares other than preference shares that are specialist securities.

**state finance organisation**

a legal person other than a company:

(1) which is a national of an EEA State;

(2) which is set up by or pursuant to a special law;

(3) whose activities are governed by that law and consist solely of raising funds under state control through the issue of debt securities;

(4) which is financed by means of the resources they have raised and resources provided by the EEA State; and
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>state monopoly</td>
<td>a company or other legal person which is a national of an EEA State and which:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>in carrying on its business benefits from a monopoly right granted by an EEA state; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>is set up by or pursuant to a special law or whose borrowings are unconditionally and irrevocably guaranteed by an EEA state or one of the federated states of an EEA state.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsidiary undertaking</td>
<td>as defined in section 1162 of the Companies Act 2006.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>substantial shareholder</td>
<td>as defined in LR 11.1.4A R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summary</td>
<td>(in relation to a prospectus) the summary included in the prospectus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUP</td>
<td>the Supervision manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplementary listing particulars</td>
<td>(in accordance with section 81(1) of the Act), supplementary listing particulars containing details of the change or new matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>supplementary prospectus</td>
<td>a supplementary prospectus containing details of a new factor, mistake or inaccuracy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Takeover Code</td>
<td>the City Code on Takeovers and Mergers issued by the Takeover Panel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>target</td>
<td>the subject of a class 1 transaction or reverse takeover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tender offer</td>
<td>an offer by a company to purchase all or some of a class of its listed equity securities at a maximum or fixed price (that may be established by means of a formula) that is:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>communicated to all holders of that class by means of a circular or advertisement in two national newspapers;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2)</td>
<td>open to all holders of that class on the same terms for at least 7 days; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>open for acceptance by all holders of that class pro rata to their existing holdings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trading day</td>
<td>a day included in the calendar of trading days published by the FCA at <a href="http://www.fca.org.uk">www.fca.org.uk</a>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transferable security</td>
<td>(as defined in section 102A of the Act) anything which is a transferable security for the purposes of MiFID, other than money-market instruments for the purposes of that directive which have a maturity of less than 12 months.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transparency rules</td>
<td>in accordance with sections 73A(1) and 89A of the Act, rules relating to the notification and dissemination of information in respect of issuers of transferable securities and relating to major shareholdings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treasury shares</td>
<td>shares which meet the conditions set out in paragraphs (a) and (b) of subsection 724(5) of the Companies Act 2006.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust deed</td>
<td>a trust deed or equivalent document securing or constituting debt securities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK</td>
<td>United Kingdom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UK Corporate</td>
<td>the UK Corporate Governance Code published in April 2016 by</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relevant definitions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>underlying instrument</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to securitised derivatives) means either:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(1) if the securitised derivative is an option or debt security with the characteristics of an option, any of the underlying investments listed in article 83 of the Regulated Activities Order; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) if the securitised derivative is a contract for differences or debt security with the characteristics of a contract for differences, any factor by reference to which a profit or loss under <a href="https://www.frc.org.uk/directors/corporate-governance-and-stewardship/uk-corporate-governance-code">article 85</a> of the Regulated Activities Order can be calculated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>universal registration document</strong></td>
<td>a universal registration document referred to in article 9 of the Prospectus Regulation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>unrecognised scheme</strong></td>
<td>a collective investment scheme which is neither a recognised scheme nor a scheme that is constituted as an authorised unit trust scheme or an authorised contractual scheme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vendor consideration placing</strong></td>
<td>a marketing, by or on behalf of vendors, of securities that have been allotted as consideration for an acquisition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>venture capital trust</strong></td>
<td>a company which is, or which is seeking to become, approved as a venture capital trust under section 842AA of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>warrant</strong></td>
<td>the investment, specified in <a href="https://www.frc.org.uk/directors/corporate-governance-and-stewardship/uk-corporate-governance-code">article 79</a> of the Regulated Activities Order (Instruments giving entitlements to investments), which is in summary: a warrant or other instrument entitling the holder to subscribe for a share, debenture, alternative debenture or government and public security.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sovereign controlled commercial company</strong></td>
<td>an issuer in which a State exercises or controls 30% or more of the votes able to be cast on all or substantially all matters at general meetings of that company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sovereign controlling shareholder</strong></td>
<td>(in relation to a company with or applying for a listing of equity shares or certificates representing shares in the category of premium listing (sovereign controlled commercial company)) a State which exercises or controls 30% or more of the votes able to be cast on all or substantially all matters at general meetings of the company.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>State</strong></td>
<td>means:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) the sovereign or other head of a State in their public capacity;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) the government of a State;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) a department of a State; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) an agency or a special purpose vehicle of a State, including an agency or special purpose vehicle of (a), (b) or (c).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix 2
Annual Financial Report for certain listed companies

2.1

App2.1.1  R As set out in LR TR 11, a listed company with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, or a listed company with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013, must comply with the requirements set out in this appendix in relation to their annual financial report. To assist listed companies, this appendix adopts the text of LR 9.8 before this was amended by the Listing Rules (Annual Financial Report) Instrument 2013 in order to cover listed companies with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, and listed companies with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013.

App2.1.2  G 9.8 Annual financial report
9.81 R [not used]
9.82 R [not used]
9.83 R [not used]

Information to be included in annual report and accounts

9.84 R In addition to the requirements set out in DTR 4.1 a listed company must include in its annual financial report, where applicable, the following:

(1) a statement of the amount of interest capitalised by the group during the period under review with an indication of the amount and treatment of any related tax relief;

(2) any information required by LR 9.2.18 R (Publication of unaudited financial information);

(3) details of any small related party transaction as required by LR 11.1.10 R (2)(c);
(4) details of any long-term incentive schemes as required by LR 9.4.3 R;

(5) details of any arrangements under which a director of the company has waived or agreed to waive any emoluments from the company or any subsidiary undertaking;

(6) where a director has agreed to waive future emoluments, details of such waiver together with those relating to emoluments which were waived during the period under review;

(7) in the case of any allotment for cash of equity securities made during the period under review otherwise than to the holders of the company’s equity shares in proportion to their holdings of such equity shares and which has not been specifically authorised by the company’s shareholders:
   (a) the classes of shares allotted and for each class of shares, the number allotted, their aggregate nominal value and the consideration received by the company for the allotment;
   (b) the names of the allottees, if less than six in number, and in the case of six or more allottees a brief generic description of each new class of equity holder (e.g. holder of loan stock);
   (c) the market price of the allotted securities on the date on which the terms of the issue were fixed; and
   (d) the date on which the terms of the issue were fixed;

(8) the information required by paragraph (7) must be given for any unlisted major subsidiary undertaking of the company;

(9) where a listed company has listed shares in issue and is a subsidiary undertaking of another company, details of the participation by the parent undertaking in any placing made during the period under review;

(10) details of any contract of significance subsisting during the period under review:
   (a) to which the listed company, or one of its subsidiary undertakings, is a party and in which a director of the listed company is or was materially interested; and
   (b) between the listed company, or one of its subsidiary undertakings, and a controlling shareholder;

(11) details of any contract for the provision of services to the listed company or any of its subsidiary undertakings by a controlling shareholder, subsisting during the period under review, unless:
   (a) it is a contract for the provision of services which it is the principal business of the shareholder to provide; and
   (b) it is not a contract of significance;

(12) details of any arrangement under which a shareholder has waived or agreed to waive any dividends; and
(13) where a shareholder has agreed to waive future dividends, details of such waiver together with those relating to dividends which are payable during the period under review.

9.8.5 G A listed company need not include with the annual report and accounts details of waivers of dividends of less than 1% of the total value of any dividend provided that some payment has been made on each share of the relevant class during the relevant calendar year.

Additional information

9.8.6 R In the case of a listed company incorporated in the United Kingdom, the following additional items must be included in its annual financial report:

(1) a statement setting out all the interests (in respect of which transactions are notifiable to the company under article 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation) of each person who is a director of the listed company as at the end of the period under review including:

(a) all changes in the interests of each director that have occurred between the end of the period under review and a date not more than one month prior to the date of the notice of the annual general meeting; or

(b) if there have been no changes in the period described in paragraph (a), a statement that there have been no changes in the interests of each director;

Interests of each director include the interests of connected persons of which the listed company is, or ought upon reasonable enquiry to become, aware.

(2) a statement showing the interests disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 as at the end of the period under review and:

(a) all interests disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 that have occurred between the end of the period under review and a date not more than one month prior to the date of the notice of the annual general meeting; or

(b) if no interests have been disclosed to the listed company in accordance with DTR 5 in the period described in (a), a statement that no changes have been disclosed to the listed company;

(3) a statement made by the directors that the business is a going concern, together with supporting assumptions or qualifications as necessary, that has been prepared in accordance with Going Concern and Liquidity Risk: Guidance for Directors of UK Companies 2009, published by the Financial Reporting Council in October 2009;

(4) a statement setting out:

(a) details of any shareholders' authority for the purchase, by the listed company of its own shares that is still valid at the end of the period under review;
(b) in the case of purchases made otherwise than through the market or by tender to all shareholders, the names of sellers of such shares purchased, or proposed to be purchased, by the listed company during the period under review;

(c) in the case of any purchases made otherwise than through the market or by tender or partial offer to all shareholders, or options or contracts to make such purchases, entered into since the end of the period covered by the report, information equivalent to that required under Part 2 of Schedule 7 to the Large & Medium Sized Companies and Groups (Accounts and Reports) Regulations 2008 (SI 2008/410) (Disclosure required by company acquiring its own shares etc); and

(d) in the case of sales of treasury shares for cash made otherwise than through the market, or in connection with an employees' share scheme, or otherwise than pursuant to an opportunity which (so far as was practicable) was made available to all holders of the listed company's securities (or to all holders of a relevant class of its securities) on the same terms, particulars of the names of purchasers of such shares sold, or proposed to be sold, by the company during the period under review;

(5) a statement of how the listed company has applied the Main Principles set out in the UK Corporate Governance Code, in a manner that would enable shareholders to evaluate how the principles have been applied;

(6) a statement as to whether the listed company has:

(a) complied throughout the accounting period with all relevant provisions set out in the UK Corporate Governance Code; or

(b) not complied throughout the accounting period with all relevant provisions set out in the UK Corporate Governance Code and if so, setting out:

(i) those provisions, if any it has not complied with;

(ii) in the case of provisions whose requirements are of a continuing nature, the period within which, if any, it did not comply with some or all of those provisions; and
(iii) the company’s reasons for non-compliance; and

(7) a report to the shareholders by the Board which contains all the matters set out in LR 9.8.8 R.

986A G (1) The effect of LR 9.8.6 R (1) is that a listed company is required to set out a ‘snapshot’ of the total interests of a director and his or her connected persons, as at the end of the period under review (including certain information to update it as at a date not more than a month before the date of the notice of the annual general meeting). The interests that need to be set out are limited to those in respect of which transactions fall to be notified under the notification requirement for PDMRs in article 19 of the Market Abuse Regulation. Persons who are directors during, but not at the end of, the period under review need not be included.

(2) A listed company unable to compile the statement in LR 9.8.6 R (1) from information already available to it may need to seek the relevant information, or confirmation, from the director himself, including that in relation to connected persons, but would not be expected to obtain information directly from connected persons.

9.8.7 R An overseas company with a premium listing must include in its annual report and accounts the information in LR 9.8.6 R (5), LR 9.8.6 R (6) and LR 9.8.8 R (9).

987A R (1) An overseas company with a premium listing that is not required to comply with requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.2 (Corporate governance statements) must comply with DTR 7.2 as if it were an issuer to which that section applies.

(2) An overseas company with a premium listing which complies with LR 9.8.7 R will be taken to satisfy the requirements of DTR 7.2.2 R and DTR 7.2.3 R, but (unless it is required to comply with requirements imposed by another EEA State that correspond to DTR 7.2) must comply with all of the other requirements of DTR 7.2 as if it were an issuer to which that section applies.

Report to shareholders

9.8.8 R The report to the shareholders by the Board required by LR 9.8.6 R (7) must contain the following:

(1) a statement of the listed company’s policy on executive directors’ remuneration;

(2) information presented in tabular form, unless inappropriate, together with explanatory notes as necessary on:

(a) the amount of each element in the remuneration package for the period under review of each director, by name, including but not restricted to, basic salary and fees, the estimated money value of benefits in kind, annual bonuses, deferred bonuses, compensation for loss of office and payments for breach of contract or other termination payments;

(b) the total remuneration for each director for the period under review and for the corresponding prior period;
(c) any significant payments made to former directors during the period under review; and

(d) any share options, including Save-as-you-earn options, for each director, by name, in accordance with the requirements of the Directors' Remuneration Report Regulations;

(3) details of any long-term incentive schemes, other than share options as required by paragraph (2)(d), including the interests of each director, by name, in the long-term incentive schemes at the start of the period under review;

(4) details of any entitlements or awards granted and commitments made to each director under any long-term incentive schemes during the period, showing which crystallize either in the same year or in subsequent years;

(5) details of the monetary value and number of shares, cash payments or other benefits received by each director under any long-term incentive schemes during the period;

(6) details of the interests of each director in the long-term incentive schemes at the end of the period;

(7) an explanation and justification of any element of a director's remuneration, other than basic salary, which is pensionable;

(8) details of any director's service contract with a notice period in excess of one year or with provisions for pre-determined compensation on termination which exceeds one year's salary and benefits in kind, giving the reasons for such notice period;

(9) details of the unexpired term of any directors' service contract of a director proposed for election or re-election at the forthcoming annual general meeting, and, if any director proposed for election or re-election does not have a directors' service contract, a statement to that effect;

(10) a statement of the listed company's policy on the granting of options or awards under its employee share scheme and other long-term incentive schemes, explaining and justifying any departure from that policy in the period under review and any change in the policy from the preceding year;

(11) for money purchase schemes details of the contribution or allowance payable or made by the listed company in respect of each director during the period under review; and

(12) for defined benefit schemes

a) details of the amount of the increase during the period under review (excluding inflation) and of the accumulated total amount at the end of the period in respect of the accrued benefit to which each director would be entitled on leaving service or is entitled having left service during the period under review;

(b) either:
(i) the transfer value (less director’s contributions) of the relevant increase in accrued benefit (to be calculated in accordance with regulations 7 to 7E of the [Occupational Pension Schemes (Transfer Values) Regulations 1996 but making no deduction for any under-funding) as at the end of the period; or

(ii) so much of the following information as is necessary to make a reasonable assessment of the transfer value in respect of each director:
   (A) age;
   (B) normal retirement age;
   (C) the amount of any contributions paid or payable by the director under the terms of the scheme during the period under review;
   (D) details of spouses and dependants benefits;
   (E) early retirement rights and options;
   (F) expectations of pension increases after retirement (whether guaranteed or discretionary); and
   (G) discretionary benefits for which allowance is made in transfer values on leaving and any other relevant information which will significantly affect the value of the benefits; and

(c) no disclosure of voluntary contributions and benefits.
Information required by law

9.8.9 G The requirements of LR 9.8.6 R (6) and LR 9.8.8 R relating to corporate governance are additional to the information required by law to be included in the listed company’s annual report and accounts.

Auditors report

9.8.10 R A listed company must ensure that the auditors review each of the following before the annual report is published:

1. LR 9.8.6 R (3) (statement by the directors that the business is a going concern); and
2. the parts of the statement required by LR 9.8.6 R (6) (corporate governance) that relate to the following provisions of the UK Corporate Governance Code:
   a. C.1.1;
   b. C.2.1; and
   c. C.3.1 to C.3.7.

9.8.11 R A listed company must ensure that the auditors review the following disclosures:

1. LR 9.8.8 R (2) (amount of each element in the remuneration package and information on share options);
2. LR 9.8.8 R (3), LR 9.8.8 R (4) and (5) (details of long term incentive schemes for directors);
3. LR 9.8.8 R (11) (money purchase schemes); and
4. LR 9.8.8 R (12) (defined benefit schemes).

9.8.12 R If, in the opinion of the auditors the listed company has not complied with any of the requirements set out in LR 9.8.11 R the listed company must ensure that the auditors’ report includes, to the extent possible, a statement giving details of the non-compliance.

Summary financial statements

9.8.13 R Any summary financial statement issued by a listed company as permitted under the Companies Act 2006 must disclose:

1. earnings per share; and
2. the information required for summary financial statements set out in or under the Companies Act 2006.
### Listing Rules

#### LR TR 1
**Transitional Provisions: General and Venture Capital Trusts**

**General Transitional Provisions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(2) Material to which the transitional provision applies</th>
<th>(3) Transitional provision</th>
<th>(4) Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>(6) Handbook provision: coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Amendments to <em>LR</em> set out in Annex B of the Transparency Obligations Directive (Disclosure and Transparency Rules) Instrument 2006, relating to: (i) DTR 4 and periodic financial reporting; and (ii) DTR 6 in so far as they may relate to, or are required to give effect to, amendments in (i).</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>deleted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1A</td>
<td><em>LR</em> provisions referring to Companies Acts 1985, 2006 or related provisions. <em>LR</em> 12.4.7 R (2)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>deleted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1B</td>
<td>A company may obtain the approval required by <em>LR</em> 12.4.7 R (2) by extraordinary resolution (rather than a special resolution) if there is a reference to an extraordinary resolution in the company’s memorandum and articles which requires or permits it and which continues to have effect by virtue of article 9 and paragraph</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>From 6 February 2008 until further notice</td>
<td>1 July 2005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Transitional Provisions: General and Venture Capital Trusts

|-----|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|----------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

#### Transitional Provisions for venture capital trusts

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>LR 15.2.11 R - LR 15.2.13A R and LR 15.4.7 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>LR 15.6.8 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Listing Rules

**LR TR 2**  
Transitional Provision for closed-ended investment funds listed before 28 September 2007

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(2) Material to which the transitional provisions apply</th>
<th>(3)</th>
<th>(4) Transitional provision</th>
<th>(5) Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>(6) Handbook provision coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>LR 15.4.1A R and LR 15.4.1B G</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>deleted</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 3

**Transitional Provisions for Investment Entities already listed under LR 14**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Material to which the transitional provisions applies</th>
<th>Translational provision</th>
<th>Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>Handbook provision coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 5.2.7A R,LR 14, LR 15 and LR 16</td>
<td>These transitional provisions apply to an entity that is an overseas company and an investment entity and that immediately before 6 March 2008 did not comply with the requirements of LR 15 or LR 16 but complied with the requirements of LR 14.</td>
<td>6 April 2010 Indefinite</td>
<td>6 April 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 5.2.7A R,LR 14, LR 15 and LR 16</td>
<td>LR 14 continues to apply to the entity for so long as it is listed after that date (and LR 15 and LR 16 do not apply) unless the entity makes an election under rule 3 of these transitional provisions.</td>
<td>6 April 2010 Indefinite</td>
<td>6 April 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>LR 5.2.7A R,LR 14, LR 15 and LR 16</td>
<td>The entity may by notice in writing given to the FCA elect to comply with the requirements of LR 15 or LR 16 (whichever is applicable to the entity) instead of the re-</td>
<td>6 April 2010 Indefinite</td>
<td>6 April 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1)</td>
<td>(2) Material to which the transitional provisions apply</td>
<td>(3)</td>
<td>(4) Transitional provision dates in force</td>
<td>(5) Transitional provision coming into force</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>LR 5.2.7A R, LR 14, LR 15 and LR 16</td>
<td></td>
<td>requirements in LR 14 from a date specified in the notice. An entity should not give notice under this transitional rule unless it has come to a reasonable opinion, after having made due and careful enquiry, that it can satisfy the requirements of LR 15 and 16 (as the case may be).</td>
<td>6 April 2010 Indefinite 6 April 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: An entity which intends to give notice under LR 3 LR TR 3 3R should consult with the FCA at the earliest possible stage if it intends to comply with the requirements of LR 15 or LR 16 (whichever is applicable to the entity) instead of the requirements in LR 14.
Transitional Provision for Issuers with a Premium Listing that are Overseas Companies

Listing Rules

LR TR 4
Transitional Provision for Issuers with a Premium Listing that are Overseas Companies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.7 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>deleted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

■ Release 45  ● Dec 2019  www.handbook.fca.org.uk  LR TR 4/1
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 5
Transitional Provision for companies incorporated in the United Kingdom

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.3.12R (1), (2) and (3)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>deleted</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Release 45  ●  Dec 2019  www.handbook.fca.org.uk  LR TR 5/1
## LR TR 6
### Transitional Provision for overseas companies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Material to which the transitional provisions applies</th>
<th>Transitional provision</th>
<th>Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>Handbook provision: coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.3.11 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.7A R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>LR 14.3.24 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[deleted]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 7

**Transitional Provision for issuers with shares that do not confer full voting rights**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 10, LR 11, LR 12</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Transitional Provision for issuers with shares that do not confer full voting rights
# Listing Rules

## LR TR 8

### Transitional Provisions for the Combined Code

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2) Material to which the transitional provision applies</th>
<th>(3)</th>
<th>(4) Transitional provision</th>
<th>(5) Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>(6) Handbook provision coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.6R (5) and LR 15.6.6R (2)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 9

Transitional Provision for a company that has a premium listing of equity shares but does not comply with LR 9.2.20R

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.20 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Transitional Provision for a company that has a premium listing of equity shares but does not comply with LR 9.2.20R
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 10

**Transitional Provision in relation to new sponsor services**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 5.6.6 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 5.6.13 R, LR 5.6.17 R, LR 5.6.26 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>LR 13.5.27B R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>expired</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Listing Rules

**LR TR 11**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.8</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>(1) LR 9.8 does not apply to a <em>listed company</em> with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, or to a <em>listed company</em> with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013.</td>
<td>From 13 December 2013</td>
<td>13 December 2013</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) A *listed company* with a financial year ending before 30 September 2013, or a *listed company* with a financial year ending on or after 30 September 2013 whose annual financial report has been made public on or before 13 December 2013, must instead comply with the requirements set out in LR App 2.
## LR TR 12
Transitional Provisions in relation to continuing obligations regarding premium listing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2AR (2)(a)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2AR (2)(a) does not apply.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014 up to and including 16 November 2014</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2AR (2)(b)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2AR (2)(b) does not apply.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014 up to and including the date of the next annual general meeting of the listed company, other than an annual general meeting for which notice: (i) has already been given; or (ii) is given within a period of 3 months from the event that resulted in a person becoming a controlling shareholder of a listed company.</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2E R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>LR 9.2.2E R does not apply.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014 up to and including the date of the next annual general meeting of the listed company other than an annual general meeting for which notice: (i) has already been given; or (ii) is given within a period of 3 months from the event that re-</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.21 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>Where a <em>listed company</em> is admitted to the <em>premium listing category</em> of the <em>official list</em> on or before 15 May 2014, LR 9.2.21 R does not apply.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014 up to and including 16 May 2016</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.4C R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>LR 9.8.4C R does not apply to a <em>listed company</em> with a financial year ending on or before 31 August 2014.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>LR 13.8.17 R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>LR 13.8.17 R does not apply.</td>
<td>From 16 May 2014 up to and including 16 August 2014</td>
<td>16 May 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Listing Rules**

**LR TR 13**

**Transitional Provisions for the UK Corporate Governance Code**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2) Material to which the transitional provision applies</th>
<th>(3)</th>
<th>(4) Transitional provision</th>
<th>(5) Transitional provision dates in force</th>
<th>(6) Handbook provision coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.6R(3)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[expired]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.6R(5), LR 9.8.6R(6) and LR 15.6.6R(2)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[expired]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.10R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>[expired]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>LR 9.8.6R(3), LR 9.8.6R(5), LR 9.8.6R(6) and LR 15.6.6R(2)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>In the case of an annual financial report of a <em>listed company</em> or a <em>closed-ended investment fund</em> incorporated in the <em>United Kingdom</em> for an accounting period ending on or before 16 June 2017, a reference to a Main Principle, principle or provision in the UK Corporate Governance Code must be read as a reference to a Main Principle, principle or provision in the UK Corporate Governance Code published by the Financial Reporting Council in September 2014.</td>
<td>From 13 September 2017 to 31 December 2017</td>
<td>13 September 2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 5.  | LR 9.8.10R                                             | R   | In the case of an annual financial report of a *listed company* or a *closed-ended investment fund* incorporated in the *United Kingdom* for an accounting period ending on or before 16 June 2017:  
(1)LR 9.8.10R does not apply; and  
(2)the *listed company* or *closed-ended investment fund* must ensure that the auditors review the following before the annual report is published:  
(a)LR 9.8.6R(3) (statements by the directors regarding going concern and longer-term viability); and(b) the parts of the statement required by LR 9.8.6R(6) (comply or explain) that relate to C.1.1, C.2.1 and C.2.3, and C.3.1 to C.3.8 of the UK Corporate Governance Code published by the Financial Reporting Council in September 2014. | From 13 September 2017 to 31 December 2017 | 13 September 2017 |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>(2) Material to which the transitional provision applies</th>
<th>(3)</th>
<th>(4) Transitional provision</th>
<th>(5) Transitional provision: dates in force</th>
<th>(6) Handbook provision coming into force</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reporting Council in September 2014.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Listing Rules

### LR TR 14

**Transitional Provisions in relation to DTR 7.3 (Related party transactions)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>LR 9.2.6CR</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A commercial company, <em>closed-ended investment fund</em> or <em>sovereign controlled commercial company</em> with <em>equity shares</em> that have a <em>premium listing</em> on 10 June 2019 is only required to comply with LR 9.2.6CR and LR 9.2.6DR from the start of the financial year beginning on or after 10 June 2019.</td>
<td>From 10 June 2019 to 31 December 2020</td>
<td>10 June 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LR 9.2.6DR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LR 15.4.1R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LR 21.4.1R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>LR 14.3.25R</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>A company that has a <em>standard listing of equity shares</em> (other than an <em>open-ended investment company</em>) on 10 June 2019 is only required to comply with LR 14.3.25R and LR 14.3.26R from the start of the financial year beginning on or after 10 June 2019.</td>
<td>From 10 June 2019 to 31 December 2020</td>
<td>10 June 2019</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LR 14.3.26R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Transitional Provisions in relation to DTR 7.3
(Related party transactions)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>A sovereign controlled commercial company with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>shares representing shares that have a premium listing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>on 10 June 2019 is only required to comply with LR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21.8.17AR and LR 21.8.17BR from the start of the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>financial year beginning on or after 10 June 2019.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Listing Rules

Schedule 1
[to follow]

Sch 1
[to follow]
Listing Rules

Schedule 2
[to follow]

Sch 2
[to follow]
Listing Rules

Schedule 3
[to follow]
Listing Rules

Schedule 4
Powers exercised

Sch 4.1 G
[deleted]

Sch 4.2 G
[deleted]
Listing Rules

Schedule 5
[to follow]
Listing Rules

Schedule 6
Rules that can be waived

Sch 6.1 G
As a result of section 138A of the Act (Modification or waiver of rules) the FCA has power to waive all its rules, other than rules made under section 137O (Threshold condition code), section 247 (Trust scheme rules), section 248 (Scheme particular rules), section 261I (Contractual scheme rules) or section 261J (Contractual scheme particulars rules) of the Act. However, if the rules incorporate requirements laid down in European directives, it will not be possible for the FCA to grant a waiver that would be incompatible with the United Kingdom's responsibilities under those directives.

Sch 6.2 G
In addition section 82 (Exemptions from disclosure) of the Act provides the FCA with discretion to authorise omissions from disclosure requirements derived from the Consolidated Admissions and Reporting Directive in the circumstances specified in that section.
Schedule 6
Rules that can be waived